



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**2 Kings**

**Version 57**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2021-12-22

**Version:** 57

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2021-12-06

**Version:** 32

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2021-09-07

**Version:** 2.1.23

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2021-09-14

**Version:** 0.22

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2021-12-09

**Version:** 24

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2021-11-25

**Version:** 27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2021 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>10</b>
2 Kings	10
Introduction to 2 Kings	11
2 Kings 1	13
2 Kings 2	32
2 Kings 3	58
2 Kings 4	86
2 Kings 5	131
2 Kings 6	159
2 Kings 7	194
2 Kings 8	215
2 Kings 9	245
2 Kings 10	283
2 Kings 11	320
2 Kings 12	342
2 Kings 13	364
2 Kings 14	390
2 Kings 15	420
2 Kings 16	459
2 Kings 17	480
2 Kings 18	522
2 Kings 19	560
2 Kings 20	598
2 Kings 21	620
2 Kings 22	647
2 Kings 23	668
2 Kings 24	706
2 Kings 25	727
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>758</b>
Abstract Nouns	759
Active or Passive	761
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	764
Background Information	767
Biblical Distance	770
Biblical Money	773
Biblical Volume	775
Biblical Weight	779
Copy or Borrow Words	781
Direct and Indirect Quotations	783
Double Negatives	785
Doublet	787
Ellipsis	789
End of Story	792
Euphemism	794
First, Second or Third Person	796
Fractions	798
Hebrew Months	800
How to Translate Names	803

Hyperbole .....	807
Idiom .....	811
Introduction of a New Event .....	813
Irony .....	816
Merism .....	819
Metaphor .....	821
Metonymy .....	827
Numbers .....	829
Ordinal Numbers .....	832
Parallelism .....	835
Personification .....	838
Possession .....	840
Rhetorical Question .....	844
Simile .....	847
Symbolic Action .....	850
Synecdoche .....	852
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words .....</b>	<b>854</b>
abomination, abominable .....	855
Abraham, Abram .....	856
Adam .....	857
adversary, enemy .....	858
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels .....	859
afflict, affliction, distress .....	860
Ahab .....	861
Ahaz .....	862
Ahaziah .....	863
Ahijah .....	864
altar .....	865
Amaziah .....	866
Amorite .....	867
Amoz .....	868
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather .....	869
appoint, appointed .....	871
Arabah .....	872
Ararat .....	873
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh .....	874
Asaph .....	875
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community .....	876
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire .....	877
Athaliah .....	878
Baasha .....	879
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian .....	880
barley .....	881
Bashan .....	882
Beersheba .....	883
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief .....	884
Beth Shemesh .....	887
Bethel .....	888
bind, bond, bound .....	889
bless, blessed, blessing .....	890
blood .....	892
blot out, wipe out .....	894

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee .....	895
bread .....	896
bridegroom .....	897
bronze .....	898
brother .....	899
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances .....	900
burnt offering, offering by fire .....	901
bury, buried, burial .....	902
call, call out .....	903
camel .....	905
captive, captivate, captivity, catch .....	906
cedar, cedarwood .....	907
Chaldea, Chaldean .....	908
chariot, charioteers .....	909
cherub .....	910
chief, leader .....	911
children, child, offspring .....	912
clean, wash .....	914
column, pillar .....	916
command, commandment .....	917
confirm, confirmation, legal .....	918
consecrate, consecrated, consecration .....	919
consume, devour .....	920
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ... ..	921
court, courtyard .....	923
covenant .....	924
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox .....	926
cry, cry out, outcry .....	927
curse, cursed, cursing .....	928
cut off, cut down .....	930
David .....	931
deceive, lie, deception, illusions .....	932
declare, proclaim, announce .....	933
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue .....	934
descend, descendant .....	935
destroy, destruction, annihilate .....	936
devour .....	937
die, dead, deadly, death .....	938
donkey, mule .....	940
drink offering .....	941
earth, land .....	942
Egypt, Egyptian .....	943
elder, older, old .....	944
Eliakim .....	945
Elijah .....	946
Elisha .....	947
Ephraim, Ephraimite .....	948
Ethiopia, Ethiopian .....	949
Euphrates River, the River .....	950
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	951
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins .....	953
exalt, exalted, exaltation .....	954

exile, exiled .....	955
face, facial .....	956
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	958
famine .....	960
favor, favorable, favoritism .....	961
fear, afraid, frighten .....	962
feast, feasting .....	963
fig .....	964
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot .....	965
firstfruits .....	966
flesh .....	967
flock, herd .....	968
forsake, forsaken, leave .....	969
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful .....	970
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out .....	972
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway .....	973
Gilead, Gileadite .....	974
Gilgal .....	975
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ... ..	976
glean, gleanings .....	977
God .....	978
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .....	980
gold, golden .....	982
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	983
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha .....	985
grain offering .....	986
grain, grainfields .....	987
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place .....	988
hand .....	989
harvest, reap .....	991
head .....	992
heart .....	993
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	994
Hebrew .....	996
Hilkiah .....	997
Hittite .....	998
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	999
honey, honeycomb .....	1001
horse, warhorse, horseback .....	1002
horseman .....	1003
Hoshea .....	1004
house, household .....	1005
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	1007
iniquity .....	1009
innocent .....	1010
Isaiah .....	1011
Israel, Israelites .....	1012
Jacob, Israel .....	1014
Jehoiada .....	1015
Jehoiakim .....	1016
Jehoshaphat .....	1017
Jehu .....	1018

Jeremiah .....	1019
Jericho .....	1020
Jeroboam .....	1021
Jerusalem .....	1022
Jew, Jewish .....	1024
Jezebel .....	1025
Jonah .....	1026
Jordan River, Jordan .....	1027
Joshua .....	1028
Josiah .....	1029
Jotham .....	1030
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad .....	1031
Judah .....	1033
Judea, Judah .....	1034
judge, judgment .....	1035
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification .....	1037
king, kingship .....	1039
kingdom .....	1041
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish .....	1043
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God .....	1045
Lebanon .....	1047
life, live, living, alive .....	1048
lord, Lord, master, sir .....	1050
messenger .....	1052
might, mighty, mighty works .....	1053
miracle, wonder, sign .....	1054
Mizpah .....	1056
Moab, Moabite .....	1057
Moses .....	1058
Naaman .....	1059
name .....	1060
Naphtali .....	1061
nation .....	1062
Nebuchadnezzar .....	1064
oath, swear, swearing, swear by .....	1065
oil .....	1066
olive .....	1067
Omri .....	1068
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs .....	1069
oversee, overseer, keeper .....	1070
Passover .....	1071
peace, peaceful, peacemakers .....	1073
people, people group .....	1074
perish .....	1076
Philistines .....	1077
pray, prayer .....	1078
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation .....	1079
priest, priesthood .....	1081
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ... ..	1083
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess .....	1084
prosper, prosperity, prosperous .....	1086
prostrate, bow down, worship .....	1087

proud, pride, prideful .....	1088
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished .....	1090
pure, purify, purification .....	1092
Ramah .....	1093
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness .....	1094
reign, rule .....	1095
remnant .....	1096
rest, rested, restless .....	1097
restore, restoration .....	1098
return, turn back .....	1099
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	1100
Rimmon .....	1102
robe, robed .....	1103
Sabbath .....	1104
sackcloth .....	1106
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering .....	1107
Samaria, Samaritan .....	1109
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	1110
scribe .....	1112
seed, semen .....	1113
seek, search, look for .....	1114
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	1115
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach .....	1118
sign, proof, reminder .....	1120
silver .....	1122
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	1123
slaughter, slaughtered .....	1125
Solomon .....	1126
son .....	1127
spirit, wind, breath .....	1129
statute .....	1131
storehouse .....	1132
strength, strengthen, strong .....	1133
sword, swordsmen .....	1135
temple, house, house of God .....	1136
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence .....	1138
thresh .....	1140
threshold, doorway .....	1141
throne, enthroned .....	1142
Tirzah .....	1143
tremble, stagger, shake .....	1144
tribe, tribal, tribesmen .....	1145
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity .....	1146
true, truth .....	1147
trumpet, trumpeters .....	1149
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .....	1150
unleavened bread .....	1151
Uriah .....	1152
vine .....	1153
vineyard .....	1154
virgin, virginity .....	1155
voice .....	1156



walk, walked .....	1157
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware .....	1158
wise, wisdom .....	1159
wrath, fury .....	1160
Yahweh .....	1161
Zadok .....	1163
Zechariah (OT) .....	1164
Zedekiah .....	1165
Zephaniah .....	1166
Zion, Mount Zion .....	1167
<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>1168</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .....	1168
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors .....	1174
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors .....	1175
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors .....	1176



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **2 Kings**

## Introduction to 2 Kings

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of 2 Kings

The prophets Elijah and Elisha (1:1-8:15)

Elijah brings Yahweh's judgment onto King Ahaziah (1:1-18)

Elijah goes to heaven and Elisha replaces him (2:1-25)

Elisha defends the northern kingdom against Moab (3:1-27)

Elisha performs various miracles (4:1-44)

Elisha heals Naaman the Syrian (5:1-27)

Elisha acts in time of war against Syria (6:1-7:20)

Elisha's reputation and prophecy about Hazael (8:1-15)

The history of Judah and Israel from Kings Jehoram and Joram to the fall of Israel (8:16-17:41)

The history of Judah from King Hezekiah to the fall of Judah (18:1-25:30)

#### What are the Books of 1 and 2 Kings about?

These books are about what happened to the people of Israel, from the time of King Solomon to the time both the northern and southern kingdoms were destroyed. These books describe how Israel split into two kingdoms after Solomon died. It also tells about all the kings that ruled over each kingdom after Solomon died.

In the southern kingdom, some kings did what Yahweh judged to be right. For example, King Josiah repaired the temple and reformed the worship of Yahweh. He responded to the high priest finding a copy of the Law of Yahweh in Jerusalem (2 Kings 22-23). However, all of the kings of the northern kingdom were wicked.

The Assyrians destroyed the northern kingdom in 722 B.C. The Babylonians destroyed the southern kingdom in 586 B.C.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

The Books of 1 and 2 Kings were originally one book in Hebrew. They were separated into two books when translated into Greek. Translators might choose more meaningful titles such as "The First Book about the Kings" and "The Second Book about the Kings."

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### What is the purpose of 1 and 2 Kings?

These books were probably finished during the exile, after the Babylonians had destroyed the temple. They show how being faithful to Yahweh results in his blessing and prospering his people. Worshipping idols and not being faithful result in their being punished and destroyed.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### Why do the Books of 1 and 2 Kings refer to someone being addressed indirectly?

In the Bible, people often referred to themselves as “your servant” when speaking to anyone in a superior position to themselves. Indirectly addressing people in this way was intended to honor the one addressed. English sometimes uses the address “sir” in this way. But a translator should use whatever expressions that are natural in the project language in order to honor someone in a superior position.

### What does the king “did what was right (or) evil in the eyes of Yahweh” mean?

The writer repeats this kind of expression throughout the Books of 1 and 2 Kings. Here “in the eyes of Yahweh” represents what Yahweh thinks about someone. If a king was faithful and obeyed the covenant, he did what was right according to Yahweh. If he was not faithful and disobeyed the covenant, he did what was evil according to Yahweh.

### What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: [Israel, Israelites](#))

### What does the phrase “to this day” mean?

This phrase was used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in 2 Kings 2:22; 8:22; 10:27; 14:7; 16:6; 17:23, 34, 41.

### Can I translate 2 Kings before 1 Kings?

The Book of 1 Kings should be translated before 2 Kings, since 2 Kings continues from where 1 Kings ends.

## 2 Kings 1

### 2 Kings 1 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

2 Kings is a continuation of 1 Kings.

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God's sovereignty

God is in control of the future. King Ahaziah sent messengers to ask the Philistine god if he would recover from his fall, but this god does not know the future. Because he asked another god instead of Yahweh, Elijah sent the messengers to tell Ahaziah that he would not recover. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical question

Elijah rebuked the king with a rhetorical question: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 2 Kings 1:1

### Moab rebelled

“The people who lived in Moab rebelled”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Moab rebelled against Israel after the death of Ahab.

## 2 Kings 1:2

### the lattice in his upper chamber

The upper room was built on the roof of the palace. The lattice was made of thin boards decoratively crossed over one another to form a balcony or window covering. Alternate translation: “the wooden boards around the flat roof of his palace” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Baal-Zebub

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- life, live, living, alive
- Ahaziah
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- messenger
- seek, search, look for
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then Ahaziah fell down through the lattice in his upper chamber in Samaria, and was injured. So he sent for messengers and said to them, “Go, ask Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron, whether I will recover from this injury.”

## 2 Kings 1:3

### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

### the Tishbite

This refers to someone from the city of Tishbe. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But the angel of Yahweh said to Elijah the Tishbite, "Arise, go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria, and ask them, 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?'"

### Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This may be written as a statement. This is irony because they are definitely aware of the God of Israel. Alternate translation: "You fools! You know there is a God in Israel, but you were acting as though you did not know when you sent men to consult Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

### consult with Baal-Zebub

The word "consult" means to get the opinion of someone about a question.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [walk, walked](#)



## 2 Kings 1:4

### Therefore Yahweh says

This is Yahweh's message to King Ahaziah. Alternate translation: "Therefore Yahweh says to King Ahaziah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### You will not come down from the bed to where you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. Alternate translation: "You will not recover and you will not get up from the bed on which you are lying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Therefore Yahweh says, "You will not come down from the bed to where you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die." Then Elijah left.

## 2 Kings 1:5

### When the messengers returned to Ahaziah

After meeting with Elijah, the messengers returned to the king instead of going to Ekron. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When the messengers returned to Ahaziah, he said to them, “Why have you returned?”

## 2 Kings 1:6

### Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This may be written as a statement. This is irony because they are definitely aware of the God of Israel. See how you translated a similar question in [2 Kings 3:3](#). Alternate translation: "You fools! You know there is a God in Israel, but you were acting as though you did not know when you sent men to consult Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. See how you translated this statement in [2 Kings 3:4](#). Alternate translation: "you will not recover and you will not get up from the bed on which you are lying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"""

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- restore, restoration
- Yahweh
- king, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- walk, walked

## 2 Kings 1:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Ahaziah said to his messengers, "What sort of man was he, the one who came up to meet you and said these words to you?"

## 2 Kings 1:8

### He wore a garment made of hair

This could mean: (1) this is a metaphor that speaks of him being very hairy as if his hair were a garment. Alternate translation: "He was very hairy" or (2) "His clothes were made from animal hair" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- Elijah

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They answered him, "He wore a garment made of hair and had a leather belt wrapped around his waist." So the king replied, "That is Elijah the Tishbite."

## 2 Kings 1:9

### Then the king sent a captain with fifty soldiers to Elijah

The king sent the leader of the army with fifty men to bring Elijah back to him. Alternate translation: "Then the king sent a captain with fifty soldiers to seize Elijah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### fifty soldiers

"50 soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [head](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then the king sent a captain with fifty soldiers to Elijah. The captain went up to Elijah where he was sitting on the top of a hill. The captain spoke to him, "You, man of God, the king has said, 'Come down.'"

## 2 Kings 1:10

### If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven

The captain had called Elijah a man of God, but the captain and the king did not show Elijah proper respect. Elijah said this so that fire would come down from heaven, and this would prove that Elijah really was a man of God and he deserved their respect. Alternate translation: "Since I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven" or "If I am a man of God as you have said, let fire come down from heaven"

### from heaven

"from the sky"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly (2)
- Elijah
- devour
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot (2)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Elijah answered and said to the captain, "If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty men." Then fire came down from heaven and consumed him and his fifty men.

## 2 Kings 1:11

### fifty soldiers

“50 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

### ULT

**11** Again King Ahaziah sent to Elijah another captain with fifty soldiers. This captain also said to Elijah, “You, man of God, the king says, ‘Come down quickly.’”



## 2 Kings 1:12

### If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven

The captain had called Elijah a man of God, but the captain and the king did not show Elijah proper respect. Elijah said this so that fire would come down from heaven, and this would prove that Elijah really was a man of God and he deserved their respect. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 1:10](#). Alternate translation: "Since I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven" or "If I am a man of God as you have said, let fire come down from heaven"

### fire of God

This means that the fire came from God. Alternate translation: "fire from God" (See: [Possession](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly \(2\)](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Elijah answered and said to them, "If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty men." Again the fire of God came down from heaven and consumed him and his fifty men.

## 2 Kings 1:13

### fifty warriors

“50 warriors” or “50 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

### implored him

“begged him”

### these fifty servants of yours

The captain says that his servants are Elijah’s servants to show him honor. AT “my fifty soldiers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### let my life and the life of ... be precious in your sight

Here Elijah’s “sight” represents him judgement or evaluation. The captain is pleading with Elijah to let them live. Alternate translation: “please consider my life and the life of ... as precious to you” or “consider my life and the life of ... to be of worth to you and do not kill us” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- life, live, living, alive
- Elijah
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility (2)
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**13** Yet again the king sent a third group of fifty warriors. This captain went up, fell on his knees before Elijah, and implored him and said to him, “You, man of God, I ask you, let my life and the life of these fifty servants of yours be precious in your sight.”

## 2 Kings 1:14

### let my life be precious in your sight

Here Elijah's "sight" represents his judgement or evaluation. The captain is repeating his request for Elijah to show kindness to him and let him live. Alternate translation: "please be kind to me" or "please allow me to live" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

**14** Indeed, fire came down from heaven and consumed the first two captains with their men, but now let my life be precious in your sight."

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- life, live, living, alive
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

## 2 Kings 1:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Yahweh
- Elijah
- king, kingship
- messenger

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The angel of Yahweh said to Elijah, "Go down with him. Do not be afraid of him." So Elijah arose and went down with him to the king.

## 2 Kings 1:16

### Is it because there is no God in Israel from whom you can ask for information?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This may be written as a statement. This is irony because the king is definitely aware of the God of Israel. Alternate translation: “You must think there is no God in Israel whom you may ask for information!” or “You fool! You know there is a God in Israel to consult, but you acted as if you did not know.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Later Elijah said to Ahaziah, “This is what Yahweh says, ‘You have sent messengers to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron. Is it because there is no God in Israel from whom you can ask for information? So now, you will not come down from the bed where you have gone up; you will certainly die.’”

### you will not come down from the bed where you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. See how you translated this statement in [2 Kings 3:4](#). Alternate translation: “you will not recover and you will not get up from the bed where you are lying” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

## 2 Kings 1:17

### the word of Yahweh that Elijah had spoken

“what Yahweh had told Elijah that Elijah had spoken”

### in the second year of Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah

This describes the time that Joram began to reign over Israel by stating how long Jehoram had been reigning over Jerusalem.

Alternate translation: “in the second year that Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat was king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

#### ULT

**17** So King Ahaziah died according to the word of Yahweh that Elijah had spoken. Joram began to reign in his place, in the second year of Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, because Ahaziah had no son.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Elijah
- Jehoshaphat
- Judea, Judah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

## 2 Kings 1:18

### are they not written ... Israel?

This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they are written ... Israel." or "someone has written about them in ... Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**18** As for the other matters concerning Ahaziah, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

## 2 Kings 2

### 2 Kings 2 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story of Elijah and begins the story of Elisha.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

Elisha replaces Elijah as the chief prophet of God. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))



## 2 Kings 2:1

### So it came about

“So it happened.” This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### a whirlwind

a strong wind that spins around and around

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Gilgal](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So it came about, when Yahweh was going to take up Elijah by a whirlwind into heaven, that Elijah left with Elisha from Gilgal.

## 2 Kings 2:2

### As Yahweh lives, and as you live

“As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live.” Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: “I solemnly promise you that” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Elijah
- Elisha
- Elisha
- forsake, forsaken, leave

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Elijah said to Elisha, “Stay here, please, because Yahweh has sent me to Bethel.” Elisha replied, “As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you.” So they went down to Bethel.

## 2 Kings 2:3

### The sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. Alternate translation: "A group of men who were prophets" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Yahweh
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Elisha
- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The sons of the prophets who were at Bethel came to Elisha and said to him, "Do you know that Yahweh will take away your master from you today?" Elisha replied, "Yes, I know it, but do not talk about it."

## 2 Kings 2:4

### As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you

“As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live, I will not leave you.” Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:2](#). Alternate translation: “I solemnly promise you that I will not leave you” (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Elijah said to him, “Elisha, wait here, please, for Yahweh has sent me to Jericho.” Then Elisha replied, “As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you.” So they went to Jericho.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Elijah
- Elisha
- Jericho
- Jericho
- forsake, forsaken, leave

## 2 Kings 2:5

### Then the sons of the prophets who were at Jericho came to Elisha and said to him

“When Elijah and Elisha came near Jericho, the sons of the prophets who were from there said to Elisha”

### the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of men who were prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Yahweh
- Elisha
- Jericho
- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then the sons of the prophets who were at Jericho came to Elisha and said to him, “Do you know that Yahweh will take away your master from you today?” Elisha answered, “Yes, I know it, but do not talk about it.”

## 2 Kings 2:6

### As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you

“As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live, I will not leave you.” Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:2](#). Alternate translation: “I solemnly promise you that I will not leave you” (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then Elijah said to him, “Stay here, please, for Yahweh has sent me to the Jordan.” Elisha replied, “As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you.” So the two went on.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Elijah
- Jordan River, Jordan
- forsake, forsaken, leave

## 2 Kings 2:7

### fifty of the sons

“50 of the sons” (See: [Numbers](#))

### the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of men who were prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

### stood opposite them

This means that they were standing, facing them. Alternate translation: “stood facing them” or “stood watching them” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Later, fifty of the sons of the prophets stood opposite them at a distance while the two stood by the Jordan.

## 2 Kings 2:8

### cloak

outer piece of clothing used as a covering

### The river divided on both sides so that the two of them walked over on dry ground

“The water of the Jordan River opened up so there was a dry path for Elijah and Elisha to cross over to the other side”

### on both sides

“to the right and the left.” This refers to the right and the left of where Elijah struck the water.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Elijah took his cloak, rolled it up, and struck the water with it. The river divided on both sides so that the two of them walked over on dry ground.



## 2 Kings 2:9

### It came about

“it happened”

### crossed over

This refers to crossing the Jordan River. Alternate translation: “crossed over the Jordan River” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### before I am taken from you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “before Yahweh takes me from you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a double portion of your spirit

Here Elijah’s spirit refers to his spiritual power. Alternate translation: “twice as much of your spiritual power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Elisha](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> It came about, after they had crossed over, that Elijah said to Elisha, “Ask me what I should do for you before I am taken from you.” Elisha replied, “Please let a double portion of your spirit come on me.”

## 2 Kings 2:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Elijah answered, “You have asked for a difficult thing. Nevertheless, if you see me when I am taken from you, this will happen for you, but if not, it will not happen.”

## 2 Kings 2:11

### behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### a chariot of fire and horses of fire

Here the phrase “of fire” means that these were surround by fire.

Alternate translation: “a chariot surrounded by fire pulled by horses surrounded by fire” (See: [Possession](#))

### went up by a whirlwind into heaven

“was carried into the sky by a whirlwind.” Translate the word “whirlwind” the same as you did in [2 Kings 2:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

**11** As they still went on and talked, behold, a chariot of fire and horses of fire appeared, which separated the two men from each other, and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.

## 2 Kings 2:12

### My father, my father

Elisha is calling Elijah his respected leader.

### tore them into two pieces

People would often tear their clothes as a sign of great sadness or grief. Alternate translation: “ripped them in two pieces to show his great sadness” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [horseman](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Elisha saw it and cried out, “My father, my father, the chariots of Israel and their horsemen!” He saw Elijah no more, and he took hold of his own clothes and tore them into two pieces.

## 2 Kings 2:13

### cloak

The cloak was the outer clothing of a prophet. It was the sign of his job. When Elisha took Elijah's cloak he was saying he was taking Elijah's place as prophet.

### Translation Words - ULT

- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- Elijah
- Jordan River, Jordan
- return, turn back

### ULT

**13** He picked up Elijah's cloak that had fallen off him, and went back to stand by the bank of the Jordan.

## 2 Kings 2:14

### Where is Yahweh, the God of Elijah?

Elisha is asking if Yahweh is with him as he was with Elijah. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, the God of Elijah, are you here with me?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### they divided on both sides and Elisha crossed over

The river separated and Elisha walked to the other side on dry ground, the same way he did previously when he was with Elijah.

### on both sides

"to the right and the left." This refers to the right and the left of where Elijah struck the water.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### ULT

**14** He struck the water with Elijah's cloak that had fallen and said, "Where is Yahweh, the God of Elijah?" When he had struck the waters, they divided on both sides and Elisha crossed over.

## 2 Kings 2:15

### the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

### bowed themselves to the ground before him

They are showing him deep respect and acknowledging him as their new leader.

### The spirit of Elijah does rest on Elisha

Here Elijah’s “spirit” refers to his spiritual power. This speaks of Elisha having this spiritual power as if it were something that physically rested upon him. Alternate translation: “Elisha does have the same spiritual power that Elijah did” or “The spiritual power Elijah had is now with Elisha” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**15** When the sons of the prophets who were from Jericho saw him across from them, they said, “The spirit of Elijah does rest on Elisha!” So they came to meet him, and bowed themselves to the ground before him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- spirit, wind, breath
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Elijah
- Elisha
- Jericho
- earth, land
- rest, rested, restless

## 2 Kings 2:16

### See now, among your servants there are fifty strong men. Let them go

These men are referring to themselves when they say “fifty strong men.” Alternate translation: “See now, we are fifty strong men and we are now your servants. Let us go” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### fifty strong men

“50 strong men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- spirit, wind, breath
- Yahweh
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> They said to him, “See now, among your servants there are fifty strong men. Let them go, we ask, and look for your master, in case the Spirit of Yahweh has taken him up and thrown him onto some mountain or into some valley.” Elisha answered, “No, do not send them.”



## 2 Kings 2:17

### But when they urged Elisha until he was ashamed

The sons of the prophets kept asking Elisha until he felt bad about saying “no.” Alternate translation: “They kept asking Elisha until he felt bad for denying their request, so” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- seek, search, look for
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But when they urged Elisha until he was ashamed, he said, “Send them.” Then they sent fifty men, and they looked for three days, but did not find him.

## 2 Kings 2:18

### Did I not say to you, 'Do not go'?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he had told them previously what would happen. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I told you that you should not go, because you would not find him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

**18** They came back to Elisha, while he stayed at Jericho, and he said to them, "Did I not say to you, 'Do not go'?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jericho](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

## 2 Kings 2:19

### The men of the city

“The leaders of the city”

### the situation of this city is pleasant

This means that the city is located in a good place. Alternate translation: “this city is in a good place” or “this city is in a good location” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### as my master can see

The men refer to Elisha here as “my master” to honor him.

### fruitful

producing good crops

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Elisha

### ULT

**19** The men of the city said to Elisha, “See, we beg of you, the situation of this city is pleasant, as my master can see, but the water is bad and the land is not fruitful.”

## 2 Kings 2:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Elisha replied, "Bring me a new bowl and put salt in it," so they brought it to him.

## 2 Kings 2:21

### healed these waters

This speaks of Yahweh making the bad water pure as if he healed it. Alternate translation: "made the waters pure" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### there will be no more death or unfruitful land

This refers to things caused by the bad water. This also can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: "there will be no more death or problems with crops caused by this water" or "from now on this water will bring life and help the land become fruitful" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### ULT

**21** Elisha went out to the spring of water and threw salt in it; then he said, "Yahweh says this, 'I have healed these waters. From this time on, there will be no more death or unfruitful land.'"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

## 2 Kings 2:22

### the waters were healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the waters have remained pure” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

**22** So the waters were healed to this day, by the word which Elisha spoke.

### to this day,...spoke

This means that something remains in a certain condition until the present time. Alternate translation: “by the word which Elisha spoke, and have always remained pure since” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Elisha](#)

## 2 Kings 2:23

### went up from there to Bethel

The phrase “went up” is used here because Bethel is higher in elevation than Jericho.

### Go up

The young boys wanted Elisha to go away from them and expressed this by saying “go up.” Alternate translation: “Go away” (See: [Idiom](#))

### baldhead

A bald person does not have any hair on their head. The young boys were mocking Elisha for having a bald head.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then Elisha went up from there to Bethel. As he was going up the road, young boys came out of the city and mocked him; they said to him, “Go up, you baldhead! Go up, you baldhead!”

## 2 Kings 2:24

### forty-two of the boys

“42 of the boys” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#)
- [name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Elisha looked behind him and saw them; he called on Yahweh to curse them. Then two female bears came out of the woods and injured forty-two of the boys.



## 2 Kings 2:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- Samaria, Samaritan

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then Elisha went from there to Mount Carmel, and from there he returned to Samaria.

## 2 Kings 3

### 2 Kings 3 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The story of Elisha continues in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Victory and defeat

God is in control of victory and defeat. The armies of Israel, Judah and Edom united to attack Moab from the desert for failure to pay tribute. When they ran out of water, they were in desperate condition. Therefore, they asked Elisha (the prophet of God) what to do and he said God would give them water and victory over Moab. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Idiom

They described Elisha with the idiom, “who poured water on the hands of Elijah,” meaning “who served Elijah.” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Anger

It is said that, “Anger came on Israel.” It is not clear who was angry or why they were angry.

## 2 Kings 3:1

### in the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah

This describes the time that Joram began to reign by stating how long the current king of Judah had reigned. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “in the eighteenth year that Jehoshaphat was king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the eighteenth year

“year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Joram son of Ahab

Sometimes this man is referred to as “Jehoram.” This is not the same person as the man mentioned in [2 Kings 1:17](#) named “Jehoram.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now in the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, Joram son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria; he reigned twelve years.

## 2 Kings 3:2

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” refers to Yahweh’s thoughts or opinion. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” or “what is evil in Yahweh’s judgement” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### but not like his father and his mother

This compares how much evil he did to being less than the amount that his parents did. Alternate translation: “but he did not do as much evil as his father and mother had done” (See: [Simile](#))

### the sacred stone pillar of Baal

This pillar was used in the worship of Baal, though it is unknown what the pillar looked like. Alternate translation: “the sacred stone pillar for worshiping Baal” (See: [Possession](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, but not like his father and his mother; for he removed the sacred stone pillar of Baal that his father had made.

## 2 Kings 3:3

### he held on to the sins

This is an idiom. Here “holding on” to something means to continue doing it. Alternate translation: “he continued to commit the sins” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Nebat

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### he did not turn away from them

“Turning away” from something is an idiom which means to stop doing it. Alternate translation: “he did not stop committing those sins” or “he continued committing those sins” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Nevertheless he held on to the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin; he did not turn away from them.

## 2 Kings 3:4

### He had to give to the king of Israel 100,000 lambs and the wool of 100,000 rams

Mesha had to give these things to the king of Israel because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Every year he was forced to give 100,000 lambs and the wool from 100,000 rams to the king of Israel, because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Now Mesha king of Moab bred sheep. He had to give to the king of Israel 100,000 lambs and the wool of 100,000 rams.

### 100,000 lambs...100,000 rams

“one hundred thousand lambs ... one hundred thousand rams” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

## 2 Kings 3:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Ahab
- Moab, Moabite
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But after Ahab died, the king of Moab rebelled against the king of Israel.

## 2 Kings 3:6

### to mobilize all Israel for war

“to prepare the people of Israel for war.” Here “all Israel” refers to all of the Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: “to mobilize all of the Israelite soldiers for war” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So King Joram left Samaria at that time to mobilize all Israel for war.



## 2 Kings 3:7

### General Information:

King Joram continues speaking to King Jehoshaphat.

### Will you go with me against Moab to battle?

The word “you” refers to Jehoshaphat, but refers to both him and his army. Here “Moab” stands for “the army of Moab.” Alternate translation: “Will you and your army go with me to fight against the army of Moab?” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### I will go

Jehoshaphat is saying that he and his entire army will fight with King Joram against Moab. Alternate translation: “We will go with you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### I am as you are, my people as your people, my horses as your horses

Jehoshaphat is letting Joram use himself, his people, and his horses for his purposes. He speaks of this as if they belonged to Joram. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “We are ready to do whatever you want us to. My soldiers and my horses are ready to help you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [people, people group](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He sent a message to Jehoshaphat king of Judah, saying, “The king of Moab has rebelled against me. Will you go with me against Moab to battle?”  
Jehoshaphat replied, “I will go. I am as you are, my people as your people, my horses as your horses.”

## 2 Kings 3:8

### By way of the wilderness of Edom

“By going through the wilderness of Edom”

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then he said, “By which way should we attack?” Jehoshaphat answered, “By way of the wilderness of Edom.”

## 2 Kings 3:9

### the king of Israel went with the king of Judah and the king of Edom

This refers to the kings accompanied by their armies. Alternate translation: “the king of Israel and his army went with the king of Judah and his army and the king of Edom and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### They wandered around

This could mean: (1) the kings were not sure where they were going, and so they changed direction often or (2) the kings knew where they were going and they walked around Moab ([2 Kings 3:8](#)).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So the king of Israel went with the king of Judah and the king of Edom. They wandered around for seven days, and then there was no water for the army or for the animals that followed them.

## 2 Kings 3:10

### What is this? Has Yahweh called three kings to give them into the hand of Moab?

The king uses a rhetorical question to emphasize how ridiculous and terrible their situation is. This can be written as a statement.

Alternate translation: "It looks like Yahweh will allow all three of us to be captured by Moab!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So the king of Israel said, "What is this? Has Yahweh called three kings to give them into the hand of Moab?"

### to give them into the hand of Moab

Here "Moab" refers to its army. Also, "the hand of Moab" refers to the "control" of Moab's army. Alternate translation: "to give us over to Moab's control" or "so the army of Moab will defeat us" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Moab, Moabite
- hand
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

## 2 Kings 3:11

### Is there not here a prophet of Yahweh, that we may consult Yahweh by him?

Jehoshaphat uses a rhetorical question here to state that he is certain that there is a prophet there and to find out where he is. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am sure there is a prophet of Yahweh here! Tell me where one is, so we may consult Yahweh by him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not here a prophet of Yahweh, that we may consult Yahweh by him?" One of the king of Israel's servants answered and said, "Elisha son of Shaphat is here, who poured water on the hands of Elijah."

### Shaphat

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### who poured water on the hands of Elijah

This idiom means that he was Elijah's helper. The phrase "poured water on the hands" is a description of one of the ways he served Elijah. Alternate translation: "who was a helper to Elijah" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 3:12

### The word of Yahweh is with him

This means that he is a prophet and that Yahweh tells him what to say. Alternate translation: "He speaks what Yahweh tells him to say" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### went down to him

They went to see Elijah and to consult with him about what they should do. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "went to see Elisha to ask him what they should do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Jehoshaphat said, "The word of Yahweh is with him." So the king of Israel, Jehoshaphat, and the king of Edom went down to him.

## 2 Kings 3:13

### What have I to do with you?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he and the king have nothing in common. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have nothing to do with you." or "I have nothing in common with you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to give them into the hand of Moab

Here the "hand of Moab" refers the Moab's "control." Alternate translation: "to give them over to the control of Moab" or "to allow them to be captured by the Moabite army" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**13** Elisha said to the king of Israel, "What have I to do with you? Go to the prophets of your father and mother." So the king of Israel said to him, "No, because Yahweh has called these three kings together to give them into the hand of Moab."

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Elisha
- Moab, Moabite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- walk, walked

## 2 Kings 3:14

### As Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely

“As I know that Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely.” Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty that, if it were not for Jehoshaphat being there, he would not pay attention to Joram. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: “As surely as Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, I promise you, if it” (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Elisha replied, “As Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely were it not for the fact that I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, I would not pay any attention to you, or even look at you.”

### before whom I stand

Here serving Yahweh is spoken of as standing in his presence. Alternate translation: “whom I serve” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### were it not for the fact that I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, I would not pay any attention to you

This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “I pay attention to you only because I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat

Here Jehoshaphat is referred to by his presence. Alternate translation: “I honor Jehoshaphat” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I would not pay any attention to you, or even look at you

These two phrases have similar meaning and are used together to emphasize that he would not pay any attention to Joram. Alternate translation: “I would not have anything at all to do with you” (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)



## 2 Kings 3:15

### Then it came to pass

“And it happened that”

### harpist

someone who plays the harp

### the hand of Yahweh came upon Elisha

Here Yahweh’s “hand” refers to his “power.” Alternate translation: “the power of Yahweh came upon Elisha” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**15** But now bring me a musician.” Then it came to pass when the harpist played, the hand of Yahweh came upon Elisha.

## 2 Kings 3:16

### trenches

A trench is a long ditch that workers dig in the ground to collect water.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**16** He said, "Yahweh says this, 'Make this dry river valley full of trenches.'

## 2 Kings 3:17

### this river valley will be filled with water

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will fill this river valley with water" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you will drink

This refers to drinking the water that Yahweh provides. Alternate translation: "you will drink the water" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, wind, breath
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

#### ULT

17 For Yahweh says this, 'You will not see wind, neither will you see rain, but this river valley will be filled with water, and you will drink, you and your livestock and all your animals.'

## 2 Kings 3:18

### This is an easy thing in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation.  
Alternate translation: "Yahweh considers this as an easy thing to do"  
or "This is an easy thing for Yahweh to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**18** This is an easy thing in the sight of Yahweh. He will also give you victory over the Moabites.

## 2 Kings 3:19

### fortified city

A fortified city is well protected from enemies by such things as high walls or a easily defensible location.

### ruin every good piece of land with rocks

This means to put rocks on the fertile land so that it is difficult to use.

The meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "ruin every good piece of land by covering them with rocks" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**19** You will attack every fortified city and every good city, cut down every good tree, stop up all springs of water, and ruin every good piece of land with rocks."

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, better, best

## 2 Kings 3:20

### there came water

“water began flowing”

### the country was filled with water

“and soon the country became filled with water”

### country

land, ground

### Translation Words - ULT

- earth, land
- grain offering

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So in the morning about the time of offering the sacrifice, there came water from the direction of Edom; the country was filled with water.

## 2 Kings 3:21

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about the Moabite army preparing to meet the three kings and their armies in battle. (See: [Background Information](#))

### all who were able to put on armor

Here “armor” represents ability to fight. Alternate translation: “all the men who could fight” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the kings had come

Here the word “kings” refers to both the kings and their armies. Alternate translation: “the kings had come with their armies” or “the kings and their armies had come” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moab, Moabite
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- king, kingship

### ULT

**21** Now when all the Moabites heard that the kings had come to fight against them, they gathered themselves together, all who were able to put on armor, and they stood at the border.

## 2 Kings 3:22

### it looked as red as blood

This compares the red appearance of the water to the color of blood.  
Alternate translation: "it was red like blood" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> They awakened early in the morning and the sun reflected on the water. When the Moabites saw the water opposite them, it looked as red as blood.



## 2 Kings 3:23

### So now, Moab

The soldiers are referring to themselves here as “Moab.” Alternate translation: “soldiers of Moab” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### plunder them

“steal their belongings.” After an army defeated their enemies, they would often plunder their towns by stealing whatever was left of value.

### ULT

**23** They exclaimed, “This is blood! The kings have certainly been destroyed, and they have killed each other! So now, Moab, let us go plunder them!”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 3:24

### camp of Israel

Here “Israel” refers only to the Israelite soldiers and not to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: “the area where the Israelite soldiers had set up their tents” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the Israelites surprised

Here “Israelites” refers only to the Israelite soldiers and not to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: “the Israelite soldiers surprised” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### fled before them

“ran away from them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)

### ULT

**24** When they came to the camp of Israel, the Israelites surprised them and attacked the Moabites, who fled before them. The army of Israel drove the Moabites across the land, killing them.

## 2 Kings 3:25

### Kir Hareseth

This is the capital of Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### was left with its rocks in place

The walls and buildings of the city were made of stones. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “still had its stone walls and buildings in place” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### with slings

A “sling” is piece of animal skin with long cords at both ends in which a person can put a stone or other small, hard object and throw it a long distance.

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, better, best

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They destroyed the cities, and on every good piece of land every man threw a rock until it was covered up. They stopped up every spring of water and chopped down all the good trees. Only Kir Hareseth was left with its rocks in place. But the soldiers armed with slings surrounded and attacked it.

## 2 Kings 3:26

### King Mesha

Translate the name of this king the same as you did in [2 Kings 3:4](#).

### that the battle was lost

“that his army was being defeated”

### seven hundred swordsmen

“700 swordsmen” (See: [Numbers](#))

### swordsmen

soldiers who fight with swords

### break through

“force their way through.” There were many soldiers fighting on the battlefield which made it difficult to move though the crowd.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### ULT

**26** When King Mesha of Moab saw that the battle was lost, he took with him seven hundred swordsmen to break through to the king of Edom, but they failed.

## 2 Kings 3:27

### offered him as a burnt offering

King Mesha burned his son with fire until he died. He did this as an offering to Chemosh, the false god of Moab. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### So there was great anger against Israel

Here the word “anger” can be expressed as a verb. There are two possibilities for who is angry here: (1) The Moabite soldiers. Alternate translation: “So the Moabite soldiers were very angry with Israel” or (2) God. Alternate translation: “So God was very angry with Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

27 Then he took his oldest son, who should have reigned after him, and offered him as a burnt offering upon the wall. So there was great anger against Israel, and the Israelite army left King Mesha and returned to their own land.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

## 2 Kings 4

### 2 Kings 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The story of Elisha continues with a group of stories about the miracles Elisha did. (See: [2 Kings 4-6](#) and [miracle, wonder, sign](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Widow

Elisha helps a widow financially, and he correctly prophesies that a barren woman would conceive and have a baby by the next year. Later, when that child dies, Elisha miraculously causes him to come back to life. Also, Elisha causes a poisonous food to no longer be harmful, and he miraculously feeds 100 people with only 20 loaves of bread.

## 2 Kings 4:1

### the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Your servant my husband

“My husband, who was your servant”

### creditor

person who lends other people money

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Yahweh
- Elisha
- cry, cry out, outcry
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**1** Now the wife of one of the sons of the prophets came crying to Elisha, saying, “Your servant my husband is dead, and you know that your servant feared Yahweh. Now the creditor has come to take my two children to be his slaves.”

## 2 Kings 4:2

### Your servant has nothing

The woman refers to herself as Elisha's servant to show him honor.

### nothing in the house, except a pot of oil

This is an exaggeration. The only valuable thing she had was a jar of oil. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- temple, house, house of God
- Elisha
- olive

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So Elisha said to her, "What can I do for you? Tell me what do you have in the house?" She said, "Your servant has nothing in the house, except a pot of oil."



## 2 Kings 4:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then Elisha said, “Go out to borrow jars from your neighbors, empty jars. Borrow as many as possible.

## 2 Kings 4:4

### you must go inside

This means to go inside their house. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "you must go inside your house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then you must go inside and shut the door behind you and your sons, and pour oil into all those jars; set aside the jars that are full."

## 2 Kings 4:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So she left Elisha and shut the door behind her and her sons. They brought the jars to her, and she filled them with oil.

## 2 Kings 4:6

### the vessels

“the jars”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When the vessels were full, she said to her son, “Bring me another jar.” But he said to her, “There are no more jars.” Then the oil stopped flowing.

## 2 Kings 4:7

### the man of God

This refers to Elisha. Alternate translation: “Elisha, the man of God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### live with your sons on the rest

This is an idiom. It means to use the money to buy the things that they need, such as food and clothing. Alternate translation: “use the rest of the money for you and your sons for what you need to live” (See: [Idiom](#))

### ULT

7 Then she came and told the man of God. He said, “Go, sell the oil; pay your debt, and live with your sons on the rest.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- walk, walked

## 2 Kings 4:8

### Shunem

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### she urged him to eat food with her

This means that she asked him to stop and have a meal at her house. Alternate translation: “she asked him to come to her house to have a meal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### passed by

“traveled through Shunem”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Elisha](#)
- [bread](#)
- [bread](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> One day Elisha walked to Shunem where an important woman lived; she urged him to eat food with her. So as often as Elisha passed by, he would stop there to eat.

## 2 Kings 4:9

### See, now I realize

“Now I understand”

### who is always passing by

“who travels by regularly”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The woman said to her husband, “See, now I realize that this is a holy man of God who is always passing by.”

## 2 Kings 4:10

### General Information:

The important woman continues talking to her husband about Elisha.

### Let us

Here “us” refers to the important woman and her husband.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)

### ULT

**10** Let us make a little room on the roof for Elisha, and let us put in it a bed, a table, a seat, and a lamp. Then when he comes to us, he will stay there.”



## 2 Kings 4:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**11** So when the day came again that Elisha stopped there, he stayed in the room and rested there.

## 2 Kings 4:12

### Gehazi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Call this Shunammite

“Call the Shunammite woman.” This refers to the woman from Shunem that Elisha was staying with.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Elisha said to Gehazi his servant, “Call this Shunammite.” When he had called her, she stood before him.

## 2 Kings 4:13

### You have gone to all this trouble to care for us

The phrase “gone to all this trouble” is an idiom that means to make great effort to do something. Alternate translation: “You have made a great effort to care for us” or “You have worked very hard to take care of us” (See: [Idiom](#))

### What can be done for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “What can we do for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Can we speak for you

Here Elisha is asking if she would like for him to speak to the king or army commander to make a request for her. The implicit meaning of this question can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Can we make a request for you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### I live among my own people

The woman is implying that she does not need anything because her family cares for her needs. Alternate translation: “I live surrounded by my family, and because they take care of me, I have no needs” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### ULT

**13** Elisha said to him, “Say to her, ‘You have gone to all this trouble to care for us. What can be done for you? Can we speak for you to the king or to the army commander?’” She answered, “I live among my own people.”

## 2 Kings 4:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> So Elisha said, "What can we do for her, then?" Gehazi answered, "Indeed, she has no son, and her husband is old."

## 2 Kings 4:15

### Call her

“Ask her to come to see me”

### When he had called her

“When Gehazi had called her”

### the door

This refers to the doorway. Alternate translation: “the doorway” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> So Elisha answered, “Call her.” When he had called her, she stood in the door.

## 2 Kings 4:16

### a son

“your son”

### my master and man of God

The woman uses both of these names to refer to Elisha.

### your servant

The woman refers to herself as Elisha’s servant to show him honor.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- feast, feasting

### ULT

**16** Elisha said, “At this time of year, in one year’s time, you will be holding a son.” She said, “No, my master and man of God, do not lie to your servant.”

## 2 Kings 4:17

### at the same time in the following year

“during the same season the next year”

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Elisha
- feast, feasting

### ULT

**17** But the woman conceived and gave birth to a son at the same time in the following year, as Elisha had said to her.

## 2 Kings 4:18

### When the child had grown

“When the child was older”

### Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- command, commandment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- harvest, reap

### ULT

**18** When the child had grown, he went out one day to his father, who was with harvesters.



## 2 Kings 4:19

### My head, my head.

The child said this because his head hurt. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "My head hurts! My head hurts!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- head
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**19** He said to his father, "My head, my head." His father said to his servant, "Carry him to his mother."

## 2 Kings 4:20

### the child sat on her knees until noon and then died

Here the woman's knees refer to her lap. She held her son in her lap until he died. Alternate translation: "she held him on her lap until noon and then he died" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> When the servant had picked him up and brought the boy to his mother, the child sat on her knees until noon and then died.

### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death

## 2 Kings 4:21

### on the bed of the man of God

This was the bed in the room she had prepared for Elisha when he traveled through Shunem. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the man of God

“Elisha, the man of God”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

**21** So the woman got up and laid the boy on the bed of the man of God, shut the door, and went out.

## 2 Kings 4:22

### that I may hurry to the man of God and then come back

The woman told her husband she was going to see Elisha but she did not say that she was going because their son had died. This implicit information may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that I may hurry to the man of God and then come back." But she did not tell her husband that their son had died" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> She called to her husband, and said, "Please send me one of the servants and one of the donkeys so that I may hurry to the man of God and then come back."

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- declare, proclaim, announce
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

## 2 Kings 4:23

### It will be all right

The woman states this, knowing this will be the case if her husband does as she requests. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Everything will be all right if you do as I ask" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sabbath
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Her husband said, "Why do you want to go to him today? It is not a new moon nor a Sabbath." She replied, "It will be all right."

## 2 Kings 4:24

### she saddled a donkey

The woman did not saddle the donkey, rather the servant would have saddled it for her. Alternate translation: "she had her servant saddle a donkey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then she saddled a donkey and said to her servant, "Drive on quickly; do not slow down for me unless I say so."

## 2 Kings 4:25

### So she went and came to the man of God at Mount Carmel

“So she traveled toward Mount Carmel where Elisha, the man of God, was”

### So when the man of God saw her in the distance

“While she was still far off, and Elisha saw her coming”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> So she went and came to the man of God at Mount Carmel. So when the man of God saw her in the distance, he said to Gehazi his servant, “Look, here comes the Shunammite woman.”

## 2 Kings 4:26

### It is alright

“It is well” or “Yes, everything is fine”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Please run to meet her and say to her, ‘Is everything alright with you and with your husband and child?’” She answered, “It is alright.”



## 2 Kings 4:27

### the mountain

“Mount Carmel”

### she caught hold of his feet

This implies that she knelt or laid on the ground in front of him and grabbed his feet. Alternate translation: “she dropped down on the ground in front of him and put her hands around his feet” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> When she came to the man of God at the mountain, she caught hold of his feet. Gehazi came near to thrust her away but the man of God said, “Leave her alone, for she is very upset, and Yahweh has hidden the problem from me, and has told me nothing.”

### Yahweh has hidden the problem from me, and has told me nothing

Elisha can see that the woman is upset but Yahweh has not revealed to him the cause of her problem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh

## 2 Kings 4:28

### Did I ask you for a son, my master? Did I not say, 'Do not deceive me'?

The woman uses these rhetorical questions to show that she is upset about what has happened. She is speaking about her conversation with Elisha when he told her that she was going to have a son. These questions may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I did not ask you to give me a son, but I did ask you not to lie to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then she said, "Did I ask you for a son, my master? Did I not say, 'Do not deceive me'?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [son](#)

## 2 Kings 4:29

### Dress for travel

“Get ready to travel”

### If you meet any man, do not greet him, and if anyone greets you, do not answer him

Elisha wanted Gehazi to travel as quickly as possible, without even stopping to talk to anyone.

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- face, facial
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then Elisha said to Gehazi, “Dress for travel and take my staff in your hand. Go to her home. If you meet any man, do not greet him, and if anyone greets you, do not answer him. Lay my staff on the child’s face.”

## 2 Kings 4:30

### As Yahweh lives, and as you live

“As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live.” This shows that the mother is taking an oath. The mother compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elisha are alive to the certainty of what she is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: “I solemnly promise that”

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But the mother of the child said, “As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you.” So Elisha arose and followed her.

## 2 Kings 4:31

### but the child did not speak or hear

This means that the child was not alive. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "but the child did not show any signs of being alive" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### has not awakened

Here being dead is spoken of as being asleep. Alternate translation: "is still dead" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- face, facial
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Gehazi hurried on ahead of them and laid the staff on the child's face, but the child did not speak or hear. So then Gehazi returned to meet Elisha and told him saying, "The child has not awakened."

## 2 Kings 4:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- house, household
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> When Elisha arrived at the house, the child was dead and was still on the bed.

## 2 Kings 4:33

### So Elisha went in and shut the door on the child and himself

“So Elisha went by himself into the room where the child lay, closed the door”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> So Elisha went in and shut the door on the child and himself and prayed to Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 4:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- flesh
- hand

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> He went up and lay on the child; he put his mouth on his mouth, his eyes on his eyes, and his hands on his hands. He stretched himself out on the boy, and the boy's body grew warm.



## 2 Kings 4:35

### stretched himself out on the boy

“laid on top of the boy again”

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Then Elisha got up and walked around the room and again went up and stretched himself out on the boy. The child sneezed seven times and then opened his eyes!

## 2 Kings 4:36

### the Shunammite

“the Shunammite woman”

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- declare, proclaim, announce
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> So Elisha called Gehazi and said, “Call the Shunammite!” So he called her, and when she came into the room, Elisha said, “Pick up your son.”

## 2 Kings 4:37

### Then she lay facedown on the ground at his feet and bowed to the ground

The woman bowed down before Elisha as a sign of great respect and appreciation. Alternate translation: “Then she bowed in front of Elisha with her face to the ground to show him her gratitude” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Then she lay facedown on the ground at his feet and bowed to the ground, and then picked up her son and went out.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [earth, land](#)

## 2 Kings 4:38

### the sons of the prophets

This is an idiom. It does not mean that they were actually the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of men who were prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

### stew

This is a dish that is usually made of meat and vegetables cooked in a pot with liquid.

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- restore, restoration
- son
- son
- Elisha
- Gilgal
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**38** Then Elisha came again to Gilgal. There was famine in the land, and the sons of the prophets were sitting before him. He said to his servant, “Put the large pot on the fire and cook stew for the sons of the prophets.”

## 2 Kings 4:39

### wild gourds

These vegetables were growing wild, meaning someone had not planted them.

### fill the fold of his robe

He lifted the bottom edge of his robe up to his waist to make a place to carry more gourds than he could carry with his hands only.

### but did not know what kind they were

Since they did not know what kind of gourds they were they did not know whether or not they were safe to eat. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “but did not know if they were good or bad to eat” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [vine](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> One of them went out into a field to gather vegetables. He found a wild vine and gathered enough wild gourds to fill the fold of his robe. They cut them up and put them into the stew, but did not know what kind they were.

## 2 Kings 4:40

### they poured out the stew

“they poured the stew into bowls”

### there is death in the pot

This means that there was something in the pot that could kill them, not that there is something dead in the pot. Alternate translation: “there is something in the pot that will kill us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> So they poured out the stew for the men to eat. Later, as they were eating, they cried out and said, “Man of God, there is death in the pot!” So they could not eat it anymore.

## 2 Kings 4:41

### He threw it into the pot

“He added it to the stew in the pot”

### Pour it out for the people

“Serve it to the people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- devour
- people, people group

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> But Elisha said, “Bring some flour.” He threw it into the pot and said, “Pour it out for the people, so that they may eat.” Then there was no longer anything hurtful in the pot.

## 2 Kings 4:42

### Baal Shalishah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### twenty loaves

“20 loaves” (See: [Numbers](#))

### from the new harvest

“made from the grain from the new harvest”

### fresh ears of grain

“fresh heads of grain.” This refers to grain from the new harvest.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [barley](#)
- [bread](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [firstfruits](#)
- [people, people group](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> A man came from Baal Shalishah to the man of God and brought twenty loaves of barley bread in his sack from the new harvest, and fresh ears of grain. He said, “Give this to the people so they can eat.”



## 2 Kings 4:43

### What, should I set this before a hundred men?

The man uses this rhetorical question to imply that this is not enough bread to feed 100 men. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "That is not enough to feed a hundred men!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### a hundred men

"100 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- devour
- devour
- people, people group
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> His servant said, "What, should I set this before a hundred men?" But Elisha said, "Give this to the people, so they can eat, because Yahweh says, 'They will eat and will have some left.'"

## 2 Kings 4:44

### the word of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is referred to by what he said. This phrase is a metonym for Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

### ULT

**44** So his servant set it before them; they ate, and left some remaining, just as the word of Yahweh promised.

## 2 Kings 5

### 2 Kings 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

## 2 Kings 5:1

### in his master's view

"sight." The king's "view" represents what he thinks about something. Alternate translation: "in the king's opinion" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### because by him Yahweh had given victory to Aram

Here "Aram" refers to the Aramean army. Alternate translation: "because through Naaman, Yahweh had given victory to the Aramean army"

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now Naaman, commander of the army of the king of Aram, was a great and honorable man in his master's view, because by him Yahweh had given victory to Aram. He was also a strong, courageous man, but he was a leper.

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Naaman
- face, facial
- king, kingship
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

## 2 Kings 5:2

### The Arameans had gone out

Here the “Arameans” refer to the Aramean soldiers. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### raiding in bands

“in small groups attacking.” This means to go out attacking an enemy in small groups.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Naaman](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The Arameans had gone out raiding in bands and had taken a little girl from the land of Israel. She served Naaman's wife.

## 2 Kings 5:3

### The girl said to her mistress

The girl from Israel, who had been captured by the Aramean soldiers, spoke to Naaman's wife.

### my master

Here "my master" refers to Naaman.

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The girl said to her mistress, "I wish that my master were with the prophet who is in Samaria! Then he would heal my master of his leprosy."

## 2 Kings 5:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So Naaman went in and told the king what the little girl from the land of Israel had said.

## 2 Kings 5:5

### I will send a letter

The king is going to give the letter to Naaman to take with him to the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "I will send a letter with you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ten talents of silver, six thousand pieces of gold

"10 talents of silver, 6,000 pieces of gold." This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "330 kilograms of silver, 6,000 pieces of gold" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

### took with him ten ... clothes

This were gifts from the king of Aram for the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "took with him ten ... clothes, which were gifts for the king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [silver](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So the king of Aram said, "Go now, and I will send a letter to the king of Israel." Naaman left and took with him ten talents of silver, six thousand pieces of gold, and ten changes of clothes.



## 2 Kings 5:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Naaman
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He also took the letter to the king of Israel that said, “Now when this letter is brought to you, you will see that I have sent Naaman my servant to you, so that you may cure him of his leprosy.”

## 2 Kings 5:7

### he tore his clothes

Often people would rip their clothes if they were in great distress. Alternate translation: "he ripped his clothes to show his distress" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Am I God, to kill and to make alive, that this man wants me to cure a man of his leprosy?

The king uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that the request of the king of Aram is outrageous and something he cannot do. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The king of Aram must think I am some sort of God, with the power over death and life! He wants me to cure this man of his leprosy, but I cannot do that." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### It seems he is seeking to start an argument with me

The king of Israel did not believe the request to heal Naamam was the real reason for the letter. He thought the real reason was to start a fight. Alternate translation: "It seems he is looking for an excuse to start a fight with me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When the king of Israel had read the letter, he tore his clothes and said, "Am I God, to kill and to make alive, that this man wants me to cure a man of his leprosy? It seems he is seeking to start an argument with me."

## 2 Kings 5:8

### General Information:

Elisha talks to the King of Israel about Naaman.

### Why have you torn your clothes?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize to the king that he does not need to be distressed and tear his clothes. Alternate translation: "There is no need to be distressed and tear your clothes." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So when Elisha the man of God heard that the king of Israel had torn his clothes, he sent word to the king saying, "Why have you torn your clothes? Let him come now to me, and he will know that there is a prophet in Israel."

## 2 Kings 5:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- Naaman
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house, household

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So Naaman came with his horses and with his chariots and stood at the door of Elisha's house.

## 2 Kings 5:10

### your flesh will be restored

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "your flesh will be well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you will be clean

this means that he will no longer be unclean. A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. God considers a person who has leprosy as being defiled and unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**10** Elisha sent a messenger to him, saying, "Go and dip yourself into the Jordan seven times, and your flesh will be restored; you will be clean."

### Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- flesh
- pure, purify, purification
- Elisha
- Jordan River, Jordan
- messenger
- return, turn back
- walk, walked

## 2 Kings 5:11

### Look

This word is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### the name of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is referred to by his name. Alternate translation: "Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### over the place

"over the diseased area of my skin" or "over my leprosy"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Naaman](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**11** But Naaman was angry and went away and said, "Look, I thought he would surely come out to me and stand and call on the name of Yahweh his God, and wave his hand over the place and heal my leprosy."

## 2 Kings 5:12

### Are not Abanah and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel?

Naaman uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that the Abanah and the Pharpar are better rivers than the Jordan. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “The Abanah and the Pharpar Rivers, in my home country of Aram, are much better than any of the rivers of Israel! (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Abanah and Pharpar

These are the names of rivers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Can I not bathe in them and be clean?

Naaman uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he could have bathed in the other rivers easily. He believes that bathing in them could heal him just as bathing in the Jordan could. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “I should have just bathed in them and been healed!” or “I could just as easily have bathed in them and been healed!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

### went away in a rage

“was very angry as he walked away”

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Israel, Israelites
- pure, purify, purification
- wrath, fury

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Are not Abanah and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel? Can I not bathe in them and be clean?” So he turned and went away in a rage.

## 2 Kings 5:13

### My father

The servants were showing respect to Naaman by addressing him as “my father” or “sir.”

### would you not have done it?

The servant uses this question to carefully rebuke Naaman. Alternate translation: “you surely would have done it!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### How much rather then

The servant is comparing how much more willing Naaman should be to obey a simple command since he is willing to obey a difficult one. Alternate translation: “How much more willing you should be to obey” or “Should you not be even more willing to obey” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### How much rather then, when he says to you to simply, ‘Dip yourself and be clean?’

The servant uses this rhetorical question to emphasize to Naaman that he should obey Elisha’s command. This question can be written as statement. Alternate translation: “You should be even more willing to obey when he says to you simply, ‘Dip yourself and be clean.’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- pure, purify, purification
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**13** Then Naaman’s servants came near and spoke to him, “My father, if the prophet had commanded you do some difficult thing, would you not have done it? How much rather then, when he says to you to simply, ‘Dip yourself and be clean?’”



## 2 Kings 5:14

### the man of God

“Elisha, the man of God”

### His flesh was restored again like the flesh of a little child

This speaks how smooth Namaan’s skin is after he is healed by comparing it to the skin of a young child. Alternate translation: “His flesh was restored again and was as soft as the flesh of a young child” or “His skin was well again and was smooth like a young child’s skin” (See: [Simile](#))

### His flesh

“His skin”

### he was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “his leprosy was gone” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [God](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**14** Then he went down and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan, obeying the instructions of the man of God. His flesh was restored again like the flesh of a little child, and he was healed.

## 2 Kings 5:15

### Look

This word is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### **there is no God in all the earth except in Israel**

"the only God in all the earth is in Israel"

### Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, land
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**15** Naaman returned to the man of God, he and all his company, and came and stood before him. He said, "Look, now I know that there is no God in all the earth except in Israel. So therefore, please take a gift from your servant."

## 2 Kings 5:16

### As Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I

“As surely as I know that Yahweh lives, before whom I stand.” Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty that he will not receive any gifts from Naaman. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: “As surely as Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I promise you that I” (See: [Simile](#))

### before whom I stand

Here serving Yahweh is spoken of as standing in his presence. Alternate translation: “whom I serve” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will receive nothing

This means that he will not accept any gifts. Alternate translation: “I will not take any gifts” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**16** But Elisha replied, “As Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I will receive nothing.” Naaman urged Elisha to take a gift, but he refused.

## 2 Kings 5:17

### If not

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: “If you will not take the gifts I have brought for you” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### let there be given to your servant

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “let me have” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### two mule loads of earth

Naaman is asking to take soil from Israel and place it in sacks for two mules to carry home with him. He then plans to build an altar on the soil. Alternate translation: “as much soil from Israel as two mules can carry, so that I can build an altar to Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### your servant

Naaman refers to himself as Elisha’s servant to honor him.

### will offer neither burnt offering nor sacrifice to any god but Yahweh

This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “will not offer burnt offering or sacrifice to any god but Yahweh” or “will only offer burnt offerings and sacrifices to Yahweh” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Naaman](#)
- [burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

17 So Naaman said, “If not, then I ask you to let there be given to your servant two mule loads of earth, for from now on, your servant will offer neither burnt offering nor sacrifice to any god but Yahweh.”

## 2 Kings 5:18

### when my king

This is referring to the king of Aram, the king that Namaan works for.

### he leans on my hand

“he supports himself on my arm.” This means that Naaman assists the king when he bows in the house of Rimmon because the king is either old or sick.

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Rimmon
- Rimmon
- hand
- house, household
- house, household
- house, household (2)
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**18** In this one thing may Yahweh pardon your servant, that is, when my king goes into the house of Rimmon to worship there, and he leans on my hand and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon, when I bow myself in the house of Rimmon, may Yahweh pardon your servant in this matter.”

## 2 Kings 5:19

### Go in peace

“Go home and do not worry” or “Leave without fear”

### Translation Words - ULT

- earth, land
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Elisha said to him, “Go in peace.” So Naaman left.

## 2 Kings 5:20

### He had traveled

“Naaman had traveled”

### Gehazi

See how you translated this man’s name in [2 Kings 4:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Look

This word is used here to draw someone’s attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Listen”

### has spared this Naaman the Aramean

“has let Naaman the Aramean leave too easily”

### by not receiving

“by not accepting”

### from his hands

Here Naaman is referred to by his hands to emphasize the act of giving. Alternate translation: “from him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### As Yahweh lives

“As surely as Yahweh lives.” Here Gehazi compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty of what he has decided to do. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: “As Yahweh lives, I promise” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Elisha
- Naaman
- hand
- punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> He had traveled only a short distance, when Gehazi the servant of Elisha the man of God said to himself, “Look, my master has spared this Naaman the Aramean by not receiving from his hands gifts that he brought. As Yahweh lives, I will run after him and receive something from him.”

## 2 Kings 5:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Naaman
- Naaman
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> So Gehazi followed after Naaman. When Naaman saw someone running after him, he jumped down from his chariot to meet him and said, "Is everything alright?"



## 2 Kings 5:22

### of the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “from among the prophets there” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Please give them a talent of silver and two changes of clothes

Gehazi is asking Naaman to give these things to him so that he can take them and give them to the prophets. Alternate translation: “Please give me a talent of silver and two changes of clothes to give to them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### See

This word is used here to draw someone’s attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Listen”

### a talent of silver

This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “33 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- silver

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Gehazi said, “Everything is alright. My master has sent me, saying, ‘See, now there have come to me from the hill country of Ephraim two young men of the sons of the prophets. Please give them a talent of silver and two changes of clothes.’”

## 2 Kings 5:23

### two talents

This can be written in modern measurements. This talents are of silver. Alternate translation: “two talents of silver” or “66 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

### laid them on two

“gave them to”

### Naaman urged Gehazi

Naaman urged him to take gifts. Alternate translation: “Naaman urged Gehazi to take the gifts” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Naaman](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

**23** Naaman replied, “I am very happy to give you two talents.” Naaman urged Gehazi and tied two talents of silver in two bags, with two changes of clothes, and laid them on two of his servants, who carried the bags of silver before Gehazi.

## 2 Kings 5:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> When Gehazi came to the hill, he took the bags of silver from their hands and hid them in the house; he sent the men away, and they left.

## 2 Kings 5:25

### Your servant

Gehazi refers to himself here as Elisha's servant.

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Elisha
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> When Gehazi went in and stood before his master, Elisha said to him, "Where have you come from, Gehazi?" He answered, "Your servant went nowhere."

## 2 Kings 5:26

### Was not my spirit with you when the man turned his chariot to meet you?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that Yahweh allowed him to see what Gehazi had done. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have realized that my spirit could see you when Naaman stopped his chariot and talked to you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Is this a time to accept money ... female servants?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that this is not the time to take gifts. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not the time to accept money ... female servants." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [olive](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [silver](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Elisha said to Gehazi, "Was not my spirit with you when the man turned his chariot to meet you? Is this a time to accept money and clothes, olive orchards and vineyards, sheep and oxen, and male servants and female servants?"

## 2 Kings 5:27

### the leprosy of Naaman will be on you and your descendants

This speaks of Gehazi and his descendant getting leprosy as if Naaman's leprosy was taken from him and given to Gehazi. Alternate translation: "you and your descendants will have leprosy, just as Naaman had leprosy"

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> So the leprosy of Naaman will be on you and your descendants forever." So Gehazi went out from his presence, a leper as white as snow.

### So Gehazi went out from his presence

The phrase "his presence" refers to the area where Elisha could see him. This means that he left the room where Elisha was. Alternate translation: "When Gehazi left the room, he was" (See: [Idiom](#))

### as white as snow

Leprosy makes skin white. Here Gehazi's leprous skin is compared to the color of snow. Alternate translation: "with skin that was white like snow" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Naaman](#)

## 2 Kings 6

### 2 Kings 6 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

==Impossible actions == Elisha caused an iron ax head to float. He fooled the whole army of Aram that was sent to arrest him. When the king of Aram besieged the capital of Israel, the people became so hungry they started eating their children. Elisha told the king of Israel that there would be plenty of food the next day, but the king's counselor said it was impossible.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical question

The king's counselor expressed his unbelief in Elisha's prophecy of plenty of food: "See, even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven, can this thing happen?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) and [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

## 2 Kings 6:1

### The sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “The group of prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

**1** The sons of the prophets said to Elisha, “The place where we live with you is too small for us all.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Elisha



## 2 Kings 6:2

### let us go to the Jordan

This refers to the area by the Jordan River. Alternate translation: "let us go beside the Jordan River" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jordan River, Jordan
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Please let us go to the Jordan, and let every man cut down a tree there, and let us build us a place there where we may live." Elisha answered, "You may go ahead."

## 2 Kings 6:3

### your servants

Here one of the prophet refers to the of the sons of the prophets as Elisha's servants to show him honor.

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> One of them said, "Please go with your servants." Elisha answered, "I will go."

## 2 Kings 6:4

### General Information:

Elisha goes with the prophets to cut trees.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So he went with them, and when they came to the Jordan, they began to cut down trees.

## 2 Kings 6:5

### the ax head fell into the water

The ax head refers to the blade of the ax. This means that the ax head came loose from its the handle and fell into the water.  
Alternate translation: "the ax head separated from the handle and fell into the water"

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But as one was chopping, the ax head fell into the water; he cried out and said, "Oh no, my master, it was borrowed!"

### Oh no

The man said this to show that he was upset and frustrated. If you have a way of expressing these emotions in your language, you can use it here.

### it was borrowed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I borrowed it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)

## 2 Kings 6:6

### So the man of God said

“So Elisha, the man of God, asked”

### He then cut off a stick, threw it in the water, and made the iron float

God uses Elisha to perform a miracle. The ax head rises to the surface of the water and it stays there so the prophet can pick it up.

### made the iron float

“caused the iron to float”

### the iron

“the ax head.” The ax head was made of iron.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So the man of God said, “Where did it fall?” The man showed Elisha the place. He then cut off a stick, threw it in the water, and made the iron float.

## 2 Kings 6:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Elisha said, "Pick it up." So the man reached out his hand and grabbed it.

## 2 Kings 6:8

### Now the king of Aram was waging war against Israel

“When the king of Aram was at war with Israel,”

#### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

### saying, “My camp will be in such and such a place

The king of Aram was telling his counselors where to set up the camp. Here the phrase “such and such” is a way to refer to the information of the location of the camp without writing it out. If this phrase does not translate well into your language this may be written as indirect speech. Alternate translation: “and told them where his camp would be located” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now the king of Aram was waging war against Israel. He consulted with his servants, saying, “My camp will be in such and such a place.”

## 2 Kings 6:9

### the man of God

“Elisha the man of God”

### Be careful not to pass that place, for the Arameans are going down there

Elisha knew the specific place that the Arameans were going to set up their camp and advised the king of Israel for his soldiers to avoid that area.

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So the man of God sent to the king of Israel, saying, “Be careful not to pass that place, for the Arameans are going down there.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingship
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware



## 2 Kings 6:10

### to the place about which the man of God had spoken and warned him

This refers to the place that Elisha had warned the king about in [2 Kings 6:9](#).

### More than once or twice, when the king went there, he was on his guard

Elisha would warn the king of where the Aramean army would attack so that he could alert the people before the attack happened. Alternate translation: "Elisha warned the king of Israel in this way several times and the Israelites were able to stay safe" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The king of Israel sent a message to the place about which the man of God had spoken and warned him. More than once or twice, when the king went there, he was on his guard.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 6:11

### Will you not tell me who among us is for the king of Israel?

The king of Aram assumes there is a traitor among his soldiers who is giving information to the Israelite king. He uses this rhetorical question to try to find out who that traitor is. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Tell me which of you is for the king of Israel!" or "Tell me which of you is revealing our plans to the king of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> The king of Aram was enraged about these warnings, and he called his servants and said to them, "Will you not tell me who among us is for the king of Israel?"

### is for the king of Israel

"To be for someone" means to be loyal to that person. In this case, it means that they would give information to help the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "is helping the king of Israel" or "is loyal to the king of Israel" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

## 2 Kings 6:12

### No

The servant is saying that none of the king's soldiers are giving information to the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "It is none of us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### my master, king

This refers to the king of Aram.

### the words that you speak in your own bedroom

"what you say in the privacy of your own bedroom"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**12** So one of his servants said, "No, my master, king, for Elisha the prophet in Israel tells the king of Israel the words that you speak in your own bedroom!"

## 2 Kings 6:13

### I may send men and capture him

The king plans to send the men to capture Elisha for him. The king does not plan to capture him himself. Alternate translation: "I may send men to capture him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### See

This word is used here to draw the king's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### he is in Dothan

"Elisha is in Dothan"

### Dothan

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

### ULT

**13** The king replied, "Go and see where Elisha is so I may send men and capture him." It was told him, "See, he is in Dothan."

## 2 Kings 6:14

### So the king

This refers to the king of Aram.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

### ULT

**14** So the king sent to Dothan horses, chariots, and a large army. They came by night and surrounded the city.

## 2 Kings 6:15

### the man of God

“Elisha” or “Elisha the man of God”

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that the servant was surprised by what he saw.

### had risen early and gone outside, behold

“got up early in the morning and went outside, and he saw”

### His servant said to him

The servant went back inside the house to tell Elisha what he had seen. Alternate translation: “The servant went back inside and said to Elisha” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [confirm, confirmation, legal](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**15** When the servant of the man of God had risen early and gone outside, behold, a large army with horses and chariots surrounded the city. His servant said to him, “Oh, my master! What will we do?”

## 2 Kings 6:16

### those who are with us are more than those who are with them

“To be with someone” in battle means to fight for their side.  
Alternate translation: “those who are on our side in the battle are more than those who are on their side” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, frighten](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Elisha answered, “Do not fear, for those who are with us are more than those who are with them.”

## 2 Kings 6:17

### open his eyes that he may see

Elisha is asking that his servant may be able to see things that other people cannot see, namely the horses and chariots of fire that are around them. Alternate translation: “make him able to see” (See: [Idiom](#))

### he saw. Behold

“he could see. What he saw was that”

### Behold

The word “Behold” here shows that the servant was surprised by what he saw.

### the mountain was full of horses

“the mountainside was covered with horses”

### around Elisha

This refers to the city where Elisha is. Alternate translation: “around the city where Elisha was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**17** Elisha prayed and said, “Yahweh, I beg that you will open his eyes that he may see.” Then Yahweh opened the servant’s eyes, and he saw. Behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire around Elisha!



## 2 Kings 6:18

### these people

This refers to the Aramean soldiers.

### Strike these people blind

“Cause these people to be blind!” This refers to Yahweh causing them to be unable to see clearly.

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- Elisha
- Elisha
- nation

### ULT

**18** When the Arameans came down to him, Elisha prayed to Yahweh and said, “Strike these people blind, I ask you.” So Yahweh made them blind, just as Elisha had asked.

## 2 Kings 6:19

### This is not the way, neither is this the city

Elisha confuses the Arameans by telling them that they are not at the city they are searching for. Alternate translation: "This is not the way, neither is this the city you are looking for" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- Samaria, Samaritan
- seek, search, look for
- walk, walked

### ULT

**19** Then Elisha told the Arameans, "This is not the way, neither is this the city. Follow me, and I will bring you to the man whom you are looking for." Then he led them to Samaria.

## 2 Kings 6:20

### It came about that

“It happened that” or “Then,”

### open the eyes of these men that they may see

Elisha is asking Yahweh to cause the men to see clearly again.

Alternate translation: “allow these men to see” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Yahweh opened their eyes and they saw

Yahweh allowed the men to see clearly again. Alternate translation: “Yahweh took away their blindness” or “Yahweh allowed them to see clearly” (See: [Idiom](#))

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that the Arameans were surprised by what they saw.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> It came about that when they had come into Samaria, Elisha said, “Yahweh, open the eyes of these men that they may see.” Yahweh opened their eyes and they saw, and behold, they were in the middle of the city of Samaria.

## 2 Kings 6:21

### when he saw them

“when he saw the Aramean soldiers”

### My father

The king is speaking to Elisha the prophet and calling him “father” to show respect.

### should I kill them? Should I kill them?

Here the king of Israel is referring to his army as himself. Alternate translation: “Should I order my army to kill these enemy soldiers?” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The king of Israel said to Elisha, when he saw them, “My father, should I kill them? Should I kill them?”

## 2 Kings 6:22

### Elisha answered

Elisha was replying to the king of Israel's question.

### Would you kill those whom you had taken captive with your sword and bow?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to rebuke the king and tell him not to kill these men. The words "sword and bow" are a metonym for war in which soldiers use swords and bows and arrows. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You would not kill men whom you had captured in war, so you should not kill these men." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Elisha answered, "You must not kill them. Would you kill those whom you had taken captive with your sword and bow? Put bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink, and go to their master."

### Put bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink

Here "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "Give them food to eat and water to drink" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### go to their master

This refers to the king of Aram.

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- bread
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch
- devour
- sword, swordsmen

## 2 Kings 6:23

### So the king prepared much food for them

The king ordered his servants to prepare the food. He did not prepare the food himself. Alternate translation: "Then the king ordered his servants to prepare a lot of food for them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Those bands

"Those groups"

### did not return for a long time into the land of Israel

This means that they did not attack Israel for a long time. Alternate translation: "stopped attacking the land of Israel for a long time" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [devour](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So the king prepared much food for them, and when they had eaten and drunk, he sent them away, and they went back to their master. Those bands of Aramean soldiers did not return for a long time into the land of Israel.

## 2 Kings 6:24

### Ben Hadad

The name of the king of Aram. His name means “son of Hadad.”  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### attacked Samaria

The king and his army attacked Samaria. Alternate translation: “they attacked Samaria” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Later after this Ben Hadad king of Aram gathered all his army and attacked Samaria and besieged it.

## 2 Kings 6:25

### Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### a donkey’s head was sold for

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “a donkey’s head cost” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### eighty pieces of silver

“80 pieces of silver” (See: [Numbers](#))

### the fourth part of a kab

This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “a fourth part of a liter” or “a quarter of a liter” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### the fourth part

This is one part out of four equal parts. Alternate translation: “one fourth” or “a quarter” or “1/4” (See: [Fractions](#))

### dove’s dung for

The words “was sold for” are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated here. Alternate translation: “dove’s dung was sold for” or “dove’s dung cost” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [donkey, mule](#)
- [famine](#)
- [head](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

**25** So there was a great famine in Samaria. Behold, they besieged it until a donkey’s head was sold for eighty pieces of silver, and the fourth part of a kab of dove’s dung for five pieces of silver.



## 2 Kings 6:26

### was passing by on the wall

“walking on top of the city wall”

### my master

The woman referred to the king by this name to show him respect.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- cry, cry out, outcry
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> As the king of Israel was passing by on the wall, a woman cried to him, saying, “Help, my master, king.”

## 2 Kings 6:27

### He said

“The king of Israel answered the woman,”

### If Yahweh does not help you, how can I help you?

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> He said, “If Yahweh does not help you, how can I help you? Is there anything coming from the threshing floor or winepress?”

The king uses this rhetorical question to tell the woman that he cannot help her. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “If Yahweh is not helping you, then I cannot help you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Is there anything coming from the threshing floor or winepress?

The king uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that there is no food available. Here the threshing floor refers to grain and the winepress refers to wine. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “There is nothing coming from the threshing floor or the winepress.” or “There is no food to harvest or any grapes to make wine to drink.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [thresh](#)

## 2 Kings 6:28

### The king continued

“The king said.” This means that they continued talking.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- devour
- devour
- king, kingship

### ULT

**28** The king continued, “What is troubling you?” She answered, “This woman said to me, ‘Give your son so that we may eat him today, and we will eat my son tomorrow.’”

## 2 Kings 6:29

### we boiled

“we cooked”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- devour
- devour

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So we boiled my son and ate him, and I said to her on the next day, “Give your son that we may eat him, but she has hidden her son.”

## 2 Kings 6:30

### heard the words of the woman

The words “the words” are a metonym for what the woman said. Alternate translation: “heard the woman tell what she and the other woman had done” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he tore his clothes

The king ripped his outer garment to show his distress. Alternate translation: “he tore his clothes in grief” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### now he was passing by on the wall

He had been walking on the city wall when the woman called out to him in [2 Kings 6:24](#). Now he continued walking along it.

### he had sackcloth underneath, against his skin

By wearing sackcloth even for his undergarments, the king showed that he was very sad and upset. Alternate translation: “he had sackcloth underneath his outer garment, against his skin” or “he was wearing sackcloth underneath his robe because he was very upset” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So when the king heard the words of the woman, he tore his clothes (now he was passing by on the wall), and the people looked and saw that he had sackcloth underneath, against his skin.

## 2 Kings 6:31

### May God do so to me, and more also

The king is saying he hopes God will punish him and even kill him if Elisha the prophet does not die because of the things that have happened in the city of Samaria. Alternate translation: "May God punish me and kill me" (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Then he said, "May God do so to me, and more also, if the head of Elisha son of Shaphat remains on him today."

### if the head of Elisha son of Shaphat remains on him today

This refers to Elisha dying, specifically be being beheaded. Alternate translation: "if Elisha son of Shaphat is not beheaded today" or "if my soldiers do not behead Elisha son of Shaphat today" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [head](#)

## 2 Kings 6:32

### The king sent a man from before him

“To be before the king” means to be one of his servants. Alternate translation: “The king of Israel sent one of his servants as a messenger” (See: [Idiom](#))

### when the messenger came to Elisha, he said to the elders

Here Elisha is speaking to the elders right before the king’s messenger arrived. Alternate translation: “when the messenger had almost arrived, Elisha said to the elders” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**32** But Elisha was sitting in his house, and the elders were sitting with him. The king sent a man from before him, but when the messenger came to Elisha, he said to the elders, “See how this son of a murderer has sent to take away my head? Look, when the messenger comes, shut the door, and hold the door shut against him. Is not the sound of his master’s feet behind him?”

### See how this son of a murderer has sent to take away my head?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to draw attention to the king’s messenger and to insult the king. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “See, this son of a murderer has sent someone to remove my head!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### son of a murderer

This means that the king of Israel has the characteristics of a murderer. Alternate translation: “this man who is like a murderer” or “that murderer” (See: [Idiom](#))

### has sent to

It is understood that he sent a person. Alternate translation: “has sent someone to” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### to take away my head

This means to behead him. Alternate translation: “to cut off my head” or “to behead me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Look, when

Elisha uses this word here to draw the elder’s attention to what he says next. Alternate translation: “Listen to what I want you to do: when”

### hold the door shut against him

If a door is shut against someone it means that it is closed and that they may not enter through it. Alternate translation: “hold the door shut so that he cannot come in” (See: [Idiom](#))

## Is not the sound of his master's feet behind him?

Elisha uses this question to assure the elders that the king is coming not far behind him. This rhetorical question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The sound of his master's feet is right behind him." or "The king will be coming along soon after he arrives." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- temple, house, house of God
- Elisha
- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old
- head



## 2 Kings 6:33

### behold, the messenger

The word “behold” alerts us to the arrival of the messenger.

### the messenger came down to him

The messenger arrived, and so did the king, as Elisha had said he would. The phrase “came down to him” means that they arrived at the place where he was. Alternate translation: “the messenger and the king arrived” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> While he was still talking with them, behold, the messenger came down to him. The king had said, “Behold, this trouble comes from Yahweh. Why should I wait for Yahweh any longer?”

### Behold

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

### this trouble

“Indeed, this trouble.” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. The phrase “this trouble” refers to the famine in Samaria and the suffering it caused.

### Why should I wait for Yahweh any longer?

This king use this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not believe that Yahweh is going to help them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “Why should I continue to wait for Yahweh to help us?” or “I will not wait any longer for help from Yahweh!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

## **2 Kings 7**

### **2 Kings 7 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Fear**

God caused the army of Aram to hear the sound of an enormous army approaching so they all ran away leaving all their food behind.

## 2 Kings 7:1

### a measure of fine flour will be sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel

It is implied that the Israelites will be paying less money for these items than they had been. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will sell a measure of fine flour for a shekel and two measures of barley for a shekel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Elisha said, "Hear the word of Yahweh. This is what Yahweh says: 'Tomorrow about this time a measure of fine flour will be sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, in the gate of Samaria.'"

### a measure of fine flour ... two measures of barley

Here the word "measure" translates the word "seah," which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: "7 liters of fine flour...14 liters of barley" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 11 grams of silver" or "one silver coin" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [barley](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

## 2 Kings 7:2

### the captain on whose hand the king leaned

A high ranking captain who was the king's personal assistant is spoken of as if he was a person on whom the king leaned his hand. Alternate translation: "the captain who was close to the king" or "the captain who was the king's personal assistant" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven

Yahweh causing much rain to fall in order to make the crops grow is spoken of as if Yahweh were opening windows in heaven through which he pours down rain. Alternate translation: "even if Yahweh were to cause much rain to fall from heaven" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### can this thing happen?

The captain asks this question to express his unbelief. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "this could never happen!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### you will watch it happen with your own eyes

The phrase "with your own eyes" emphasizes that the captain will certainly see the things that Elisha prophesied. Alternate translation: "you yourself will watch these things happen" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### but you will not eat any of it

"but you will not eat any of the flour or barely"

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then the captain on whose hand the king leaned answered the man of God, and said, "See, even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven, can this thing happen?" Elisha replied, "See, you will watch it happen with your own eyes, but you will not eat any of it."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 7:3

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the writer starts to tell a new part of the story.

### Why should we sit here until we die?

Although there were four men, probably only one of them asks this question. The question is rhetorical and emphasizes that they should not do this. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Certainly we should not sit here until we die" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now there were four men with leprosy right outside the city gate. They said one to another, "Why should we sit here until we die?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

## 2 Kings 7:4

### **If they keep us alive, we will live, and if they kill us, we will only die**

The four men with leprosy are saying that the Arameans might feed them so that they can live, or they might kill them, which would be no worse since they would die anyway.

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- die, dead, deadly, death
- die, dead, deadly, death
- die, dead, deadly, death
- walk, walked

### **ULT**

<sup>4</sup> If we say that we should go into the city, then the famine is in the city, and we will die there. But if we still sit here, we will still die. Now then, come, let us go to the army of the Arameans. If they keep us alive, we will live, and if they kill us, we will only die.”

## 2 Kings 7:5

### at twilight

This refers to the early evening after the sun has set, but before it is dark.

### the outermost part

“the edge”

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So they rose up at twilight to go into the Aramean camp; when they arrived at the outermost part of the camp, there was no one there.

## 2 Kings 7:6

### the Aramean army hear a noise of chariots, and a noise of horses—the noise of another large army

The soldiers of the Aramean army heard noises that sounded like a large army approaching to battle them. This was not an actual army, but the Lord had made them hear these sounds.

### they said to each other

“the Aramean soldiers said to each other”

### the kings of the Hittites and Egyptians

Here the word “kings” represents the kings and their armies. Alternate translation: “the armies of the Hittites and the Egyptians” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### to come against us

“to fight us” or “to attack us”

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Hittite
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For the Lord had made the Aramean army hear a noise of chariots, and a noise of horses—the noise of another large army, and they said to each other, “The king of Israel has hired the kings of the Hittites and Egyptians to come against us.”



## 2 Kings 7:7

### General Information:

This is what happened after the Lord caused the Aramean soldiers to think they heard a large enemy army approaching their camp.

### in the twilight

This refers to the early evening after the sun has set, but before it is dark.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- donkey, mule
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So the soldiers arose and fled in the twilight; they left their tents, their horses, their donkeys, and the camp as it was, and fled for their lives.

## 2 Kings 7:8

### plunder

This refers to items that a conquering army takes from another army that they have defeated. Here it refers to “silver and gold and clothes.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- gold, golden
- return, turn back
- silver

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> When the men with leprosy came to the outermost part of the camp, they went into one tent and ate and drank, and carried away silver and gold and clothes, and went and hid them. They came back and entered into another tent and carried plunder away from there also, and went and hid it.

## 2 Kings 7:9

### until daybreak

“until morning”

### punishment will overtake us

Someone punishing the four men is spoken of as if punishment were a person who captures them. Alternate translation: “the people will punish us” or “someone will punish us” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

### tell the king’s household

Here the word “household” represents the people who live in the king’s palace. Alternate translation: “tell the king and his people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [iniquity](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then they said each other, “We are not doing right. This day is a day of good news, but we are keeping quiet about it. If we wait until daybreak, punishment will overtake us. Now then, come, let us go and tell the king’s household.”

## 2 Kings 7:10

### as they were

The implicit information may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “as they were when the soldiers were still there” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Adam
- declare, proclaim, announce
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### ULT

**10** So they went and called the gatekeepers of the city. They told them, saying, “We went to the camp of the Arameans, but there was no one there, not the sound of anyone, but there were the horses tied, and the donkeys tied, and the tents as they were.”

## 2 Kings 7:11

### then it was told inside the king's household

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “then people told it inside the king’s household” or “then people told it to the king and those in his palace” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- declare, proclaim, announce
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house, household
- king, kingship

### ULT

**11** Then the gatekeepers shouted out the news, and then it was told inside the king's household.

## 2 Kings 7:12

### have done to us

“are planning to do to us” or “have done to deceive us”

### take them alive

This means that they would capture the people and not kill them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- life, live, living, alive
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**12** Then the king arose at night and said to his servants, “I will tell you now what the Arameans have done to us. They know that we are hungry, so they have gone out of the camp to hide themselves in the fields. They are saying, ‘When they come out of the city, we will take them alive, and get into the city.’”

## 2 Kings 7:13

### the horses that remain, which are left in the city

Many of the horses belonging to the Israelites had died because of the famine. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “the horses in the city that are still alive” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### see

The implicit information about what he wanted to see may be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: “see if what these lepers have said is true” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> One of the king’s servants answered and said, “I beg you, let some men take five of the horses that remain, which are left in the city. They are like all the rest of the population of Israel who are left—most are now dead; let us send them and see.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

## 2 Kings 7:14

### Go and see

The implicit information about what the king wanted them to see may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Go and see if what these lepers have said is true" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- horse, warhorse, horseback
- king, kingship
- walk, walked

### ULT

**14** So they took two chariots with horses, and the king sent them after the army of the Arameans, saying, "Go and see."



## 2 Kings 7:15

### They went after them to the Jordan

“They followed the path the Aramean army took all the way to the Jordan River”

### all the road was full of clothes and equipment

This is an exaggeration that means the men saw these items scattered along the road as they traveled. Alternate translation: “there were clothes and equipment all along the road” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### ULT

**15** They went after them to the Jordan, and all the road was full of clothes and equipment that the Arameans had cast away in their hurry. So the messengers returned and told the king.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

## 2 Kings 7:16

### plundered the camp

This refers to taking items from a defeated army.

### So a measure of fine flour was sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So people sold a measure of fine flour for a shekel and two measures of barley for a shekel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a measure of fine flour ... two measures of barley

Here the word "measure" translates the word "seah," which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: "7 liters of fine flour...14 liters of barley" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 11 grams of silver" or "one silver coin" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### just as the word of Yahweh had said

Here "word" represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: "just as Yahweh had said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [barley](#)
- [people, people group](#)

#### ULT

**16** The people went out and plundered the camp of the Arameans. So a measure of fine flour was sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, just as the word of Yahweh had said.

## 2 Kings 7:17

### the captain on whose hand he had leaned

A high ranking captain who was the king's personal assistant is spoken of as if he were a person on whom the king leaned his hand. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: "the captain who was close to the king" or "the captain who was the king's personal assistant" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### trampled him down

The crowd of people were in such a rush to get to the food in the camp that they knocked over the man and trampled him to death.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

### ULT

**17** The king had ordered the captain on whose hand he had leaned to be in charge of the gate, and the people trampled him down in the gateway. He died as the man of God had said, who spoke when the king had come down to him.

## 2 Kings 7:18

### General Information:

In this verse, the writer summarizes what happened by repeating the events that he described in [2 Kings 7:1](#). (See: [End of Story](#))

### About this time

“About this time tomorrow”

### two measures of barley ... a measure of fine flour

Here the word “measure” translates the word “seah,” which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: “14 liters of barley...7 liters of fine flour” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: “about 11 grams of silver” or “one silver coin” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [barley](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**18** So it happened as the man of God had said to the king, saying, “About this time in the gate of Samaria, two measures of barley will be available for a shekel, and a measure of fine flour for a shekel.”

## 2 Kings 7:19

### General Information:

In this verse, the writer summarizes what happened by repeating the events that he described in [2 Kings 7:2](#). (See: [End of Story](#))

### See

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### ULT

**19** That captain had answered the man of God and said, “See, even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven, can this thing happen?” Elisha had said, “See, you will watch it happen with your own eyes, but you will not eat any of it.”

### even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven

Yahweh causing much rain to fall in order to make the crops grow is spoken of as if Yahweh were opening windows in heaven through which he pours down rain. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: “even if Yahweh were to cause much rain to fall from heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### can this thing happen?

The captain asks this question to express his unbelief. This question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: “this could never happen!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### you will watch it happen with your own eyes

The phrase “with your own eyes” emphasizes that the captain will certainly see the things that Elisha prophesied. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: “you yourself will watch these things happen” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### but you will not eat any of it

“but you will not eat any of the flour or barley”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- devour

## 2 Kings 7:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- people, people group

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> That is what exactly what happened to him, for the people trampled him in the gate, and he died.

## 2 Kings 8

### 2 Kings 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Kings

Elisha told Hazael that he would be king of Aram. Jehoram became king of Judah. He was evil so Edom and Libna revolted and chose their own kings. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

## 2 Kings 8:1

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

### the woman whose son he had restored to life

The story of this woman and her son is found at [2 Kings 4:8](#).

### he had restored to life

“he had caused to become alive again”

### Arise, and go

To arise here is for a person to stop what he is doing and begin to do what he needs to do. Alternate translation: “Do as I say, and go”

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Yahweh
- Elisha
- earth, land
- house, household

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now Elisha had spoken to the woman whose son he had restored to life. He said to her, “Arise, and go with your household, and stay wherever you can in another land, because Yahweh has called for a famine which will come on this land for seven years.”



## 2 Kings 8:2

### the woman arose and she obeyed the word of the man of God

To arise here is for a person to stop what he is doing and begin to do what he needs to do. She may have been standing when she heard Elisha speak and decided to go.

### the man of God

“Elisha, the man of God”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [house, household](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So the woman arose and she obeyed the word of the man of God. She went with her household and lived in the land of the Philistines seven years.

## 2 Kings 8:3

### to the king

This refers to the king of Israel.

### for her house and for her land

While the woman was gone, her home and property were sieged. She is begging for them to be returned to her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “for her home and her property to be returned to her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> It came about at the end of seven years that the woman returned from the land of the Philistines, and she went to the king to beg him for her house and for her land.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

## 2 Kings 8:4

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells us background information about what the king was doing when the woman arrived. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**4** Now the king was talking with Gehazi the servant of the man of God, saying, "Please tell me all the great things that Elisha has done."

## 2 Kings 8:5

### had restored to life the child who was dead

“had caused the child who was dead to become alive again”

### for her house and land

While the woman was gone, her home and property were sieged. She is begging for them to be returned to her. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “for her home and her property to be returned to her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son
- Elisha
- cry, cry out, outcry
- die, dead, deadly, death
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then as he was telling the king how Elisha had restored to life the child who was dead, the very woman whose son he had restored to life came to beg the king for her house and land. Gehazi said, “My master, king, this is the woman, and this is her son, whom Elisha restored to life.”

## 2 Kings 8:6

### about her son

This refers to the story of her son dying and Elisha bringing him back to life. The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “about what had happened to her son” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### all the harvests of her fields

This metonym refers to the amount of money that the harvests of her fields were worth while she was away. Alternate translation: “all the profit from the harvests of her fields” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

6 When the king asked the woman about her son, she explained it to him. So the king ordered a certain officer for her, saying, “Give back to her all that was hers and all the harvests of her fields since the day that she left the land until now.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 8:7

### Ben Hadad

This is the name of the king of Aram. His name means “son of Hadad.” See how you translated this man’s name in [2 Kings 6:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Elisha came to Damascus where Ben Hadad the king of Aram was sick. The king was told, “The man of God has come here.”

## 2 Kings 8:8

### Hazael

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Take a gift

Hazael was to take many gifts, not just one. Alternate translation: “take many gifts” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### in your hand

The phrase “in your hand” is an idiom meaning for him to take the gifts with him. Alternate translation: “with you” (See: [Idiom](#))

### the man of God

“Elisha, the man of God”

### consult with Yahweh through him, saying

“ask Elisha to ask Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The king said to Hazael, “Take a gift in your hand and go meet the man of God, and consult with Yahweh through him, saying, ‘Will I recover from this sickness?’”

## 2 Kings 8:9

### carried by forty camels

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which forty camels carried”

### forty camels

“40 camels” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Your son Ben Hadad king of Aram

Ben Hadad was not actually Elisha’s son, but Hazael called him that to show a close relationship between them. Alternate translation: “Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, who is like a son to you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So Hazael went to meet him and took a gift with him of every kind of good thing of Damascus, carried by forty camels. So Hazael came and stood before Elisha and said, “Your son Ben Hadad king of Aram has sent me to you, saying, ‘Will I recover from this sickness?’”

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- son
- burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- camel
- grain offering
- hand
- king, kingship



## 2 Kings 8:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Elisha
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Elisha said to him, "Go, say to Ben Hadad, 'You will surely recover,' but Yahweh has shown me that he will surely die."

## 2 Kings 8:11

### until he was ashamed

“until Hazael felt uncomfortable”

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- God
- face, facial
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### ULT

**11** Then Elisha stared at Hazael until he was ashamed, and the man of God wept.

## 2 Kings 8:12

### my master

Hazael refers to Elisha this way to honor him.

### Because I know

God has shown Elisha what will take place in the future.

### you will do

The word “you” represents Hazael and refers to himself and the soldiers under his control when he is king. Alternate translation: “you will cause to happen” or “you will order your soldiers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### You will set ... you will kill

The word “you” represents Hazael but here refers to his soldiers and not to Hazael personally. Alternate translation: “Your soldiers will set ... your soldiers will kill” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### dash in pieces their little ones

“crush their little children.” This is a brutal description of the soldiers killing children.

### kill their young men with the sword

This means that the men will be killed in battle. The sword was the main weapon used in battle. Alternate translation: “kill their young men in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### rip open their pregnant women

Specifically this refers to tear open their stomachs. Alternate translation: “rip open the stomachs of their pregnant women with swords” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [son](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Hazael asked, “Why do you weep, my master?” He answered, “Because I know the evil that you will do to the people of Israel. You will set their strongholds on fire, and you will kill their young men with the sword, dash in pieces their little ones, and rip open their pregnant women.”

## 2 Kings 8:13

### Who is your servant, that he should do this great thing?

Hazel refers to himself here as Elisha's servant. Hazel uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not think he could do the terrible things that Elisha has said. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I could never do such great things!" or "Who am I, that I would have the power to do such things?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### this great thing

"this terrible thing." Here the word "great" refers to something that has a large effect and is terrible.

### He is only a dog

Hazael is talking about himself. He speaks of his low status and lack of influence by comparing himself to a dog. Here a dog represents a lowly animal. Alternate translation: "I am as powerless as a dog" or "I am as powerless as a lowly animal" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Hazael replied, "Who is your servant, that he should do this great thing? He is only a dog." Elisha answered, "Yahweh has shown me that you will be king over Aram."

## 2 Kings 8:14

### came to his master

The phrase "his master" refers to Ben Hadad.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Elisha
- Elisha

### ULT

**14** Then Hazael left Elisha and came to his master, who said to him, "What did Elisha say to you?" He answered, "He told me that you would certainly recover."

## 2 Kings 8:15

### face so that he died

This means that Ben Hadad suffocated under the wet blanket. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “face. Ben Hadad was unable to breathe through it, and so he died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death
- face, facial
- reign, rule

### ULT

**15** Then the next day Hazael took the blanket and dipped it in water, and spread it on Ben Hadad's face so that he died. Then Hazael became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 8:16

### General Information:

Jehoram becomes king of Judah.

### In the fifth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel

This describes the time that Jehoram began to reign over Judah by stating how long Joram, the current king of Israel, had been reigning. Alternate translation: "In the fifth year that Jorman son of Ahab was king of Israel" or "In year five of the reign of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### fifth year

"year 5" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Jehoram began to reign

Jehoram, son of Jehoshaphat, became the king of Judah.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship \(2\)](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**16** In the fifth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel, Jehoram began to reign. He was the son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah. He began to reign when Jehoshaphat was king of Judah.

## 2 Kings 8:17

### thirty-two years old

“32 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup>Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned for eight years in Jerusalem.



## 2 Kings 8:18

### Jehoram walked in the ways of the kings of Israel

Here “walking” is an idiom that refers to how he lived and reigned as king. At this time in history, the recent kings of Israel had been evil kings. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Jehoram was an evil king, just as other kings of Israel who ruled before him had been” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Jehoram walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, as the house of Ahab was doing; for he had Ahab’s daughter as his wife, and he did what was evil in Yahweh’s sight.

### as the house of Ahab was doing

Here the “house” of Ahab refers to the members of Ahab’s family and his recent descendants. Ahab is Jehoram father-in-law. Alternate translation: “the same as the rest of the family of Ahab was doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### for he had Ahab’s daughter as his wife

Jehoram had married king Ahab’s daughter.

### what was evil in Yahweh’s sight

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 8:19

### destroy Judah

Here “Judah” is a metonym for the people who live there. Alternate translation: “destroy the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### since he had told him that he would always give him descendants

“since Yahweh had told David that he would always give David descendants.” This refers to Yahweh’s promise to David that his descendants would always rule Judah. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “since he had told David that his descendants would always rule Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**19** However, because of his servant David, Yahweh did not want to destroy Judah, since he had told him that he would always give him descendants.

## 2 Kings 8:20

### Edom revolted from under

“Edom rebelled against”

### the hand of Judah

Here the word “hand” refers to the control of Judah, and “Judah” refers specifically to the king of Judah. Alternate translation: “the control of the king of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they set a king over themselves

“they appointed a king to rule over themselves”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> In Jehoram’s days, Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah, and they set a king over themselves.

## 2 Kings 8:21

### Then Jehoram crossed over

What was “crossed over” can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Then Jehoram crossed the enemy lines” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people, people group](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### ULT

**21** Then Jehoram crossed over to Zair with all his chariots. When the Edomites surrounded Jehoram, his chariot commanders rose up and attacked them during the night; but Jehoram’s army ran away and went back to their homes.

## 2 Kings 8:22

### General Information:

King Jehoram of Judah dies and his son Ahaziah becomes king.

### So Edom has been in rebellion against the rule of Judah to this present day

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So Edom has been in rebellion against the rule of Judah to this present day. Libnah also revolted at the same time.

“So after that, Edom was no longer controlled by Judah, and it is still like that”

### the rule of Judah

Here “Judah” refers to the king of Judah. Alternate translation: “the rule of the king of Judah” or “the authority of the king of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to this present day

to the time that this book was written

### Libnah also revolted at the same time

Libnah rebelled against the king of Judah just as Edom had. Alternate translation: “During that same time, Libnah also rebelled against the king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Libnah

This is another city that was originally part of Judah. Here “Libnah” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the people of Libnah” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [hand](#)

## 2 Kings 8:23

### As for the other matters concerning Jehoram, all that he did

“To read more about the history of Jehoram and what he did,”

### are they not written ... Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Jehoram is in this other book. Alternate translation: “these things are written ... Judah.” or “someone has written about them ... Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jehoram, all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

## 2 Kings 8:24

### Jehoram rested with his fathers and was buried with them

Here “rested” is a polite way of referring to someone dying. After he died, his body was buried in the same place as the bodies of his forefathers. The phrase “was buried” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Jehoram died as his ancestors had died, and they buried him with his ancestors” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Jehoram rested with his fathers and was buried with them in the city of David. Then Ahaziah his son became king in his place.

### Then Ahaziah his son became king in his place

“Then Ahaziah, Jehoram’s son, became king after he died”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ahaziah
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

## 2 Kings 8:25

### General Information:

Ahaziah becomes king of Judah.

### In the twelfth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel

This describes the time that Ahaziah began to reign as king of Judah by stating how long Joram, the current king of Israel, had reigned. Alternate translation: "in the twelfth year that Joram son of Ahab was king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### twelfth year

"12th year" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> In the twelfth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel, Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, began to reign.



## 2 Kings 8:26

### twenty-two years

“22 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Athaliah ... Omri

Athaliah is the name of a woman. Omri is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Omri](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he began to reign; he reigned for one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Athaliah; she was the daughter of Omri, king of Israel.

## 2 Kings 8:27

### Ahaziah walked in the ways of

Here “walking” refers his behavior or the way in which he lived.  
Alternate translation: “Ahaziah lived the same way as the others in”  
(See: [Idiom](#))

### the house of Ahab

Here the “house” of Ahab refers to his family. Alternate translation: “the family of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a son-in-law to the house of Ahab

This explains Ahaziah’s family relationship to Ahab. Ahaziah’s father was married to Ahab’s daughter. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “the son of Ahab’s son-in-law” or “a grandson of King Ahab” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Ahaziah walked in the ways of the house of Ahab; he did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as the house of Ahab was doing, for Ahaziah was a son-in-law to the house of Ahab.

## 2 Kings 8:28

### Ahaziah went with Joram son of Ahab, to fight against Hazael, king of Aram

The names of the three kings listed here are synecdoches and refer also to their armies that accompany them. Alternate translation: "Ahaziah's army joined the army of King Joram of Israel to fight against the army of King Hazael of Aram" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ahab
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Ahaziah went with Joram son of Ahab, to fight against Hazael, king of Aram, at Ramoth Gilead. The Arameans wounded Joram.

## 2 Kings 8:29

### to be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to heal” or “to recover” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### against Hazael king of Aram

Here “Hazael” refers to himself and his army. Alternate translation: “the army of Hazael king of Aram” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Joram had been wounded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Arameans had wounded Joram” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Ahab
- Ahaziah
- Judea, Judah
- Ramah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)
- return, turn back

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> King Joram returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds that the Arameans had given him at Ramah, when he fought against Hazael king of Aram. So Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, went down to Jezreel to see Joram son of Ahab, because Joram had been wounded.

## 2 Kings 9

### 2 Kings 9 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The life of Elisha continues in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### King Jehu

Elisha told a young prophet to go and tell Jehu that God had made him the new king. Jehu killed the kings of both Israel and Judah and Jezebel, the mother of the king. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## 2 Kings 9:1

### the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of the prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

### in your hand

The phrase “in your hand” refers to him taking the bottle with him. Alternate translation: “with you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Ramoth Gilead

Translate the name of this city the same as you did in [2 Kings 8:28](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Elisha
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- hand

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Elisha the prophet called one of the sons of the prophets and said to him, “Dress for travel, then take this little bottle of oil in your hand and go to Ramoth Gilead.”

## 2 Kings 9:2

### Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi

This means that Jehoshaphat is Jehu's father and that Nimshi is Jehoshaphat's father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### companions

These are the people with whom Jehu was sitting.

### conduct him to

"go along with him to" or "take him along to"

### an inner chamber

"a private room"

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehu

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> When you arrive, look for Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi, and go in and make him arise up from among his companions, and conduct him to an inner chamber.

## 2 Kings 9:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- head
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then take the bottle of oil and pour it on his head and say, 'Yahweh says this: "I have anointed you king over Israel."' Then open the door, and run off; do not delay."



## 2 Kings 9:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So the young man, the young prophet, went to Ramoth Gilead.

## 2 Kings 9:5

### behold

The writer uses the word “behold” to direct attention to what follows. If you have a way of doing this in your language, you can use it here.

### the captains of the army were sitting

Jehu was sitting among the captains. You may introduce Jehu to the story line here if this is necessary in your language. Alternate translation: “Jehu and some other army officers were sitting together” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### To which of us

The word “us” refers to Jehu and the other army captains.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When he arrived, behold, the captains of the army were sitting. So the young prophet said, “I have come on an errand to you, captain.” Jehu replied, “To which of us?” The young prophet answered, “To you, captain.”

## 2 Kings 9:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- head
- house, household
- king, kingship
- people, people group

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So Jehu arose and went into the house, and the prophet poured the oil on his head and said to Jehu, "Yahweh, the God of Israel, says this: 'I have anointed you king over the people of Yahweh, over Israel.

## 2 Kings 9:7

### General Information:

The young prophet continues to speak to Jehu, whom he had just anointed as king over Israel.

### **I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of Yahweh**

Here the “blood” of the prophets and the servants refers to their deaths. Alternate translation: “I may avenge the deaths of my servants the prophets and all the servants of Yahweh” or “so that I may punish them for murdering my servants the prophets and all the servants of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **the blood**

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: “avenge the blood” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### **who were murdered by the hand of Jezebel**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Jezebel commanded her servants to murder” or “whose deaths were commanded by Jezebel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **by the hand of Jezebel**

This means that Jezebel commanded the people to be killed. Alternate translation: “by an order from Jezebel” or “by Jezebel’s command” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Jezebel](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> You must kill the family of Ahab your master, so that I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of Yahweh, who were murdered by the hand of Jezebel.

## 2 Kings 9:8

### For the whole family of Ahab will perish, and I will cut off from Ahab every male child

Here to be “cut off” means to be killed. Alternate translation: “For the whole family of Ahab will perish, and I will cause every male child in his family to be killed” or “Every member of Ahab’s family will die, including every male child” (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For the whole family of Ahab will perish, and I will cut off from Ahab every male child, whether he is a slave or a free person.

### every male child

This phrase is used to refer to every male, but it specifies “child” to emphasize that it includes children. Alternate translation: “every male” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [house, household](#)

## 2 Kings 9:9

### General Information:

The young prophet continues to speak the words of Yahweh to Jehu, whom he had just anointed as king over Israel.

### I will make the house of Ahab like

This means that God will destroy Ahab and his family just as he destroyed Jeroboam and Baasha and their families. Alternate translation: "I will get rid of the house of Ahab like I got rid of" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the house of

This phrase is used in this verse three times. Each time, the word "house" refers to the "family" of the man specified. Alternate translation: "the family of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Nebat ... Ahijah

These are the names of men. Translate the name "Nebat" the same as you did in [2 Kings 3:3](#). (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Ahab
- Ahijah
- Baasha
- Jeroboam
- house, household
- house, household

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> I will make the house of Ahab like the house of Jeroboam son of Nebat and like the house of Baasha son of Ahijah.

## 2 Kings 9:10

### The dogs will eat Jezebel

This means that the dogs will eat her dead body. Alternate translation: "Dogs will eat the dead body of Jezebel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jezebel
- bury, buried, burial
- devour

### ULT

**10** The dogs will eat Jezebel in Jezreel, and there will be no one to bury her.'" Then the prophet opened the door and ran off.

## 2 Kings 9:11

### the servants of his master

This refers to the other officers who were serving King Ahab.

### mad fellow

“crazy man”

### You know the man and the kinds of things he says

Jehu says that he is a young prophet and they all are familiar with the kinds of things young prophets generally say. Alternate translation: “You know what kinds of things young prophets like him say”

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Jehu
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**11** Then Jehu came out to the servants of his master, and one said to him, “Is everything alright? Why did this mad fellow come to you?” Jehu answered them, “You know the man and the kinds of things he says.”



## 2 Kings 9:12

### Tell us

“Tell us what he said”

### He said this and that to me

“He talked about some things”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They said, “That is a lie. Tell us.” Jehu answered, “He said this and that to me, and he also said, ‘This is what Yahweh says: I have anointed you as king over Israel.’”

## 2 Kings 9:13

### took off his outer garment and put it under Jehu

In this culture, putting clothing on the ground was a way of honoring the king, so that his feet would not touch the dirty ground. Alternate translation: “took off their outer clothes and put them in front of Jehu for him to walk on” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then each of them quickly took off his outer garment and put it under Jehu at the top of the steps. They blew the trumpet and said, “Jehu is king.”

### They blew the trumpet and said

Not every man blew a trumpet. It is likely only one man blew a trumpet. Alternate translation: “One of them blew the trumpet and they all said” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)

## 2 Kings 9:14

### Nimshi

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [2 Kings 9:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Now Joram

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about how Joram was wounded and went to recover in Jezreel. (See: [Background Information](#))

### all Israel

These refers only to the Israelite army and not to everyone who lives in Israel. Alternate translation: “he and his army” or “he and the Israelite army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Hazael

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [2 Kings 8:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

### ULT

**14** In this way Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi conspired against Joram. Now Joram had been defending Ramoth Gilead, he and all Israel, because of Hazael king of Aram,

## 2 Kings 9:15

### to be healed of

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to recover from” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the wounds that the Arameans had given him

This means that he was wounded in battle with the Arameans. Alternate translation: “wounds that Joram got during the battle with the Aramean army” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### against Hazael king of Aram

This refers to Hazael and his army. Alternate translation: “against Hazael king of Aram and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Jehu said to the servants of Joram

This refers to the officers who were with Joram at Ramoth Gilead.

### If this is your opinion

“If you are in agreement with me” Jehu uses this phrase to refer to if people are supportive of him being king and of his decisions. Alternate translation: “If you truly want me to be your king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### in order to go tell this news in Jezreel

This refers to telling Joram and his army of Jehu’s plans. Alternate translation: “to warn king Joram and his army in Jezreel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Jehu
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- return, turn back

### ULT

**15** but King Joram had gone back to Jezreel to be healed of the wounds that the Arameans had given him, when he had fought against Hazael king of Aram. Jehu said to the servants of Joram, “If this is your opinion, then let no one escape and go out of the city, in order to go tell this news in Jezreel.”

## 2 Kings 9:16

### Now Ahaziah

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about Ahaziah visiting Joram. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaziah
- Jehu
- Judea, Judah
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- king, kingship

### ULT

**16** So Jehu rode in a chariot to Jezreel; for Joram was resting there. Now Ahaziah king of Judah had come down to see Joram.

## 2 Kings 9:17

### watchman

guard

### the company of Jehu as he came at a distance

"Jehu and his men as they were still far away"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Jehu](#)

### ULT

**17** The watchman was standing on the tower in Jezreel, and he saw the company of Jehu as he came at a distance; he said, "I see a group of men coming." Joram said, "Take a horseman, and send him out to meet them; tell him to say, 'Are you coming in peace?'"

## 2 Kings 9:18

### What have you to do with peace?

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to tell the messenger that it is none of his concern if he comes in peace or not. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is not your concern if I have come in peace!" or "It is not for you to know if I have come in peace!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### The messenger has met them, but he is not coming back

The watchman told King Joram that the man he sent out is not coming back with a reply to the king's question.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**18** So a man was sent on horseback to meet him; he said, "The king says this: 'Are coming in peace?'" So Jehu said, "What have you to do with peace? Turn and ride behind me." Then the watchman told the king, "The messenger has met them, but he is not coming back."

## 2 Kings 9:19

### Then he sent out a second man on horseback, who came to them

“Then king Joram sent a second messenger riding a horse, who went out to meet Jehu and his army”

#### a second man

Joram had already sent one man. This was the next. Alternate translation: “another man” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### What have you to do with peace?

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to tell the messenger that it is none of his concern if he comes in peace or not. This may be written as a statement. See how you translated this question in [2 Kings 9:18](#). Alternate translation: “It is not your concern if I have come in peace!” or “It is not for you to know if I have come in peace!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- king, kingship
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Then he sent out a second man on horseback, who came to them and said, “The king says this: ‘Are you coming in peace?’” Jehu answered, “What have you to do with peace? Turn and ride behind me.”



## 2 Kings 9:20

### For the way that the chariot is being driven is the way that Jehu son of Nimshi drives

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Because the driver of the chariot drives the same way that Jehu son of Nimshi drives" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jehu](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Again the watchman reported, "He has met them, but he is not coming back. For the way that the chariot is being driven is the way that Jehu son of Nimshi drives; he is driving wildly."

## 2 Kings 9:21

### each in his chariot

“each in his own chariot”

### They found him at

“When they reached Jehu, he was at”

### Naboth

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jezreelite

This refers to a person from Jezreel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship \(2\)](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> So Joram said, “Get my chariot ready.” They prepared his chariot, and Joram king of Israel and Ahaziah king of Judah rode out, each in his chariot, to meet Jehu. They found him at the property of Naboth the Jezreelite.

## 2 Kings 9:22

### **What peace is there, when the idolatrous acts of prostitution and witchcraft of your mother Jezebel are so many?**

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to state why he is not coming in peace. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "There can be no peace as long as your mother Jezebel practices and promotes so much idolatry in the form of prostitution and witchcraft." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### **ULT**

<sup>22</sup> When Joram saw Jehu, he said, "Are you coming in peace, Jehu?" He answered, "What peace is there, when the idolatrous acts of prostitution and witchcraft of your mother Jezebel are so many?"

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Jehu
- Jehu
- Jezebel

## 2 Kings 9:23

### turned his chariot and fled

“turned his chariot around to try to flee”

### treachery

trickery or deception

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- hand

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So Joram turned his chariot and fled and said to Ahaziah, “There is treachery, Ahaziah.”

## 2 Kings 9:24

### with his full strength

“with all of his strength” or “with all of his power”

### he sank down in his chariot

Joram died from being shot with arrow. Alternate translation: “Joram fell down dead in his chariot” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then Jehu drew his bow with his full strength and shot Joram between his shoulders; the arrow went through his heart, and he sank down in his chariot.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [hand](#)

## 2 Kings 9:25

### Bidkar

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Pick him up and throw him

“Pick up his dead body and throw it” or “Take his corpse and throw it”

### Think about how

“Remember”

### after Ahab his father

This means that they rode in the chariot behind Ahab’s chariot. Alternate translation: “behind his father Ahab’s chariot” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Yahweh placed this prophecy against him

“Yahweh spoke this prophecy against Ahab”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then Jehu said to Bidkar his captain, “Pick him up and throw him in the field of Naboth the Jezreelite. Think about how when you and I rode together after Ahab his father, Yahweh placed this prophecy against him:

## 2 Kings 9:26

### I will surely make you pay for it

This means that he will punish Ahab as he deserves for the evil he has done. Alternate translation: "I will give you what you deserve for the evil you have done" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### pick him up and throw him on this field

"take Joram's dead body and throw it into the field of Naboth"

### according to the word of Yahweh

"to fulfill the prophecy spoken to us"

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- blood
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

### ULT

**26** 'Yesterday I saw the blood of Naboth and the blood of his sons—declares Yahweh—and I will surely make you pay for it on this field—declares Yahweh. Now then, pick him up and throw him on this field, according to the word of Yahweh."

## 2 Kings 9:27

### General Information:

This is the account of what happened to Ahaziah, the king of Judah, after Jehu killed Joram.

### saw this

“saw what happened to Joram”

### Beth Haggan ... Gur ... Ibleam ... Megiddo

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### at the ascent of Gur

The word “ascent” means that they were going up hill while travelling on the road to Gur. Alternate translation: “on the road leading up to Gur” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaziah
- Jehu
- Judea, Judah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- house, household
- king, kingship

### ULT

**27** When Ahaziah the king of Judah saw this, he fled up the road to Beth Haggan. But Jehu followed him, and said, “Kill him also in the chariot,” and they shot him at the ascent of Gur, which is by Ibleam. Ahaziah fled to Megiddo and died there.



## 2 Kings 9:28

### his fathers

“his ancestors”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> His servants carried his body in a chariot to Jerusalem and buried him in his tomb with his fathers in the city of David.

## 2 Kings 9:29

### in the eleventh year of Joram son of Ahab

This describes the time that Ahaziah began to reign by stating how long the current king of Israel had reigned. Alternate translation: “in the eleventh year that Joram son of Ahab was king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### eleventh year

“11th year” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Now it was in the eleventh year of Joram son of Ahab that Ahaziah had begun to reign over Judah.

## 2 Kings 9:30

### Painted her eyes, arranged her hair

“put on makeup, made her hair look nice”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Jezebel](#)
- [head](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> When Jehu came to Jezreel, Jezebel heard of it, and she painted her eyes, arranged her hair, and looked out the window.

## 2 Kings 9:31

### Are you coming in peace, you Zimri, your master's murderer?

Jezebel uses this rhetorical question to accuse Jehu of not coming peacefully. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are certainly not coming in peace, you Zimri, your master's murderer!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> As Jehu was entering the gate, she said to him, "Are you coming in peace, you Zimri, your master's murderer?"

### you Zimri, your master's murderer

Here Jezebel calls Jehu "Zimri" to say that he is a murderer. Zimri was a commander of the army of Israel who murdered the king of Israel because he wanted to be king. Alternate translation: "you murdered your master, just like Zimri murdered his master" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Zimri

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Jehu
- die, dead, deadly, death
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

## 2 Kings 9:32

### Who is on my side

To “be on someone’s side” means to be loyal to them and supportive of them. Alternate translation: “Who is loyal to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [face, facial](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Jehu looked up at the window and said, “Who is on my side? Who?” Then two or three eunuchs looked out.

## 2 Kings 9:33

### Throw her down

Jehu was telling the eunuchs to throw Jezebel out of the window.

### So they threw Jezebel down

The eunuchs threw Jezebel out of the high window and she died when she hit the ground. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Jehu trampled her underfoot

This means that he drove his horses over her body. Alternate translation: "Jehu's horses that were pulling his chariot trampled her body under their feet" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> So Jehu said, "Throw her down." So they threw Jezebel down, and some of her blood spattered on the wall and the horses, and Jehu trampled her underfoot.

## 2 Kings 9:34

### See now to

The phrase “see now to” means to give your attention to whatever is specified. Alternate translation: “Now go to” (See: [Idiom](#))

### for she is a king’s daughter

Since Jezebel was the daughter of a king, it was necessary to bury her properly. Alternate translation: “because she is a king’s daughter and therefore should be buried properly” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> When Jehu entered the palace, he ate and drank. Then he said, “See now to this cursed woman and bury her, for she is a king’s daughter.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [devour](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 9:35

### they found no more of her than

“they found no more of her body than” This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “all they found that was left of her body were”

### the palms of her hands

The palm is the inner part of the hand.

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> They went to bury her, but they found no more of her than the skull, the feet, and the palms of her hands.



## 2 Kings 9:36

### the Tishbite

This refers to someone from the city of Tishbe. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 1:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Jezebel](#)
- [devour](#)
- [hand](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> So they came back and told Jehu. He said, "This is the word of Yahweh which he spoke by his servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying, 'In the land at Jezreel the dogs will eat the flesh of Jezebel,

## 2 Kings 9:37

**the body of Jezebel will be like dung on the surface of the fields ... so that no one will be able to say**

This speaks of the pieces of Jezebel's body being scattered in the field as if they were dung spread in the field. Since the pieces of her body were so small and spread out there was nothing that could be collected and buried. Alternate translation: "the pieces of Jezebel's body will be scattered like dung in the fields ... so that no one will be able to recognize them and say" (See: [Simile](#))

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> and the body of Jezebel will be like dung on the surface of the fields in the land at Jezreel, so that no one will be able to say, "This is Jezebel."""

### dung

manure, specifically dung used as a fertilizer

**so that no one will be able to say, "This is Jezebel."**

"so that no one will be able to recognize her body." or "so no one will be able to tell this was Jezebel."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jezebel](#)
- [Jezebel](#)
- [face, facial](#)

## 2 Kings 10

### 2 Kings 10 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

God's prophecy against the family of Ahab was fulfilled. Jehu killed all of Ahab's descendants and all the worshipers of Baal. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#))

## 2 Kings 10:1

### seventy descendants

“70 descendants” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Jehu wrote letters and sent them to Samaria

This means that Jehu sent a messenger to deliver the letters.

Alternate translation: “Jehu wrote letters and sent a messenger to deliver them in Samaria” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now Ahab had seventy descendants in Samaria. Jehu wrote letters and sent them to Samaria, to the rulers of Jezreel, including the elders and the guardians of Ahab’s descendants, saying,

## 2 Kings 10:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “Your master’s descendants are with you, and you also have chariots and horses and a fortified city and armor. So then, as soon as this letter comes to you,

## 2 Kings 10:3

### set him on his father's throne

Here, sitting on the king's throne means to be appointed as king. Alternate translation: "make him king in his father's place" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### for your master's royal line

"your master's descendants." Here the man that they selected to be king is referred to as Ahab's royal line of descendants. Alternate translation: "to defend your master's descendant" or "to defend him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> select the best and most deserving of your master's descendants and set him on his father's throne, and fight for your master's royal line."

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- throne, enthroned

## 2 Kings 10:4

### But they were terrified

“Then they were very afraid”

### the two kings

“two kings, Joram and Ahaziah”

### could not stand before Jehu

Here “stand” means to be able to endure under trouble. Alternate translation: “could not endure against Jehu” or “could not resist Jehu”

### So how can we stand?

The descendants use the rhetorical question to imply that they cannot stand against Jehu. Alternate translation: “We cannot stand against him either!” or “We cannot resist him either!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed
- fear, afraid, frighten
- king, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But they were terrified and said among themselves, “See, the two kings could not stand before Jehu. So how can we stand?”

## 2 Kings 10:5

### the man who was over the city

“the mayor of the city.” Here to be “over” something means to have authority and responsibility over it. Alternate translation: “the man who was in charge of the city”

### they who raised the children

This refers to the people who raised the king’s children. Alternate translation: “they who raised the king’s children” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Do what is good in your eyes

Here Jehu’s “eyes” refer to his “sight.” His “sight” refers to what he thinks. Alternate translation: “Do what you judge to be right” or “Do whatever you think is the best” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Jehu
- elder, older, old
- house, household
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then the man who was in charge of the palace, and the man who was over the city, and the elders also, and they who raised the children, sent word back to Jehu, saying, “We are your servants. We will do everything that you command us. We will not make any man king. Do what is good in your eyes.”



## 2 Kings 10:6

### wrote a letter the second time to them

Joram had written one letter. This was the next. Alternate translation: “again wrote a letter to them” or “wrote another letter to them” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### on my side

To “be on someone’s side” means to be loyal to them and supportive of them. Alternate translation: “loyal to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

### listen

to hear and obey

### to my voice

Here Jehu’s “voice” refer to what he says. Alternate translation: “to what I say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you must take the heads ... and come to me

It is implied that they are to bring the heads of the Ahab’s descendant and present them to Jehu. Alternate translation: “you must take the heads ... and bring them to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### you must take the heads of the men of your master’s descendants

This refers to killing them and removing their heads. Alternate translation: “kill your master’s descendants and cut off their heads” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### seventy in number

“70 in number” (See: [Numbers](#))

### who were bringing them up

This means that they were supervising them and teaching them. Alternate translation: “who were raising them” or “who were supervising them” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son
- head
- king, kingship
- proud, pride, prideful

### ULT

6 Then Jehu wrote a letter the second time to them, saying, “If you are on my side, and if you will listen to my voice, you must take the heads of the men of your master’s descendants, and come to me to Jezreel by tomorrow this time.” Now the king’s descendants, seventy in number, were with the important men of the city, who were bringing them up.

## 2 Kings 10:7

### seventy persons

“70 persons” (See: [Numbers](#))

### sent them to Jehu

This means that they sent people to deliver the baskets to Jehu.  
Alternate translation: “sent people to take them to Jehu” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [son](#)
- [head](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So when the letter came to them, they took the king's sons and killed them, seventy persons, put their heads in baskets, and sent them to Jehu in Jezreel.

## 2 Kings 10:8

### of the king's sons

"of Ahab's descendants"

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- head
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> A messenger came to Jehu, saying, "They have brought the heads of the king's sons." So he said, "Put them in two heaps at the entrance of the gate until the morning."

## 2 Kings 10:9

### Jehu went out and stood

“Jehu went to the city gate and stood before the people”

### You are innocent

It can be stated clearly what they were innocent of. This could mean:

(1) Alternate translation: “You are innocent of what happened to Joram” or (2) this means that they are not held responsible for the deaths of Joram’s family. Alternate translation: “You are innocent of what happened to Joram and his family” or “You are innocent of this matter” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### See

Jehu uses this word here to draw the peoples’ attention to what he says next. Alternate translation: “Listen” or “Hear my words”

### but who killed all these?

Jehu uses a rhetorical question to cause the people to think deeply about the situation. This can be written as a statement. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: “but the men of Samaria are responsible for killing Ahab’s 70 descendants” or (2) Alternate translation: “but it was Yahweh’s will for these men to die” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
- [people, people group](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> In the morning Jehu went out and stood, and said to all the people, “You are innocent. See, I plotted against my master and killed him, but who killed all these?”

## 2 Kings 10:10

### certainly realize

“understand” or “be aware of the fact that”

### no part of Yahweh’s word ... will fall to the ground

This speaks of everything happening that Yahweh has said will happen as if it were something that did not die and fall to the ground. Alternate translation: “No part of Yahweh’s word ... will fail” or “every part of Yahweh’s word ... will happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Yahweh has done

This speaks of Yahweh causing Ahab’s descendants to be killed as if he killed them himself. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has caused to happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**10** Now you should certainly realize that no part of Yahweh’s word, the word that he spoke concerning the family of Ahab, will fall to the ground, for Yahweh has done what he spoke about through his servant Elijah.”

## 2 Kings 10:11

### So Jehu killed all ... and his priests

Jehu did not kill all of these people personally, rather he commanded for them to be killed. Alternate translation: "So Jehu commanded for all ... to be killed" or "So Jehu commanded for all ... to die" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### all who remained

"all who were alive" or "all who were left"

### until none of them remained

This means that they had all been killed. Alternate translation: "until all of them had been killed" or "until all of them were dead" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**11** So Jehu killed all who remained in the family of Ahab in Jezreel, and all his important men, his close friends, and his priests, until none of them remained.

## 2 Kings 10:12

### Beth Eked of the shepherd

This was the name of a place where sheep were sheared. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### ULT

**12** Then Jehu arose and left; he went to Samaria. As he was arriving at Beth Eked of the shepherd,

## 2 Kings 10:13

### going down to greet

“going to visit”

### the children of the king

“the children of King Joram”

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- son
- son
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- Jehu
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

**13** he met brothers of Ahaziah king of Judah. Jehu said to them, “Who are you?” They answered, “We are brothers of Ahaziah, and we are going down to greet the children of the king and the children of Queen Jezebel.”



## 2 Kings 10:14

### Take them alive

This means to capture them, but not to kill them. Alternate translation: "Seize them" or "Capture them" (See: [Idiom](#))

### So they took them alive

"So they captured them"

### forty-two men

"42 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### He did not leave any of them alive

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "He killed all of them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- slaughter, slaughtered

### ULT

**14** Jehu said to his own men, "Take them alive." So they took them alive and killed them at the well of Beth Eked, all forty-two men. He did not leave any of them alive.

## 2 Kings 10:15

### Jehonadab son of Recab

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Is your heart with me, as my heart is with yours?...“It is.”

Here a person’s “heart” refers to their loyalty. If a person’s loyalty is “with someone,” it means that they are loyal to that person.

Alternate translation: “Will you be loyal to me, as I will be loyal to you?...‘I will.’” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### If it is, give me your hand

“If so, put your hand in mine” or “If so, let us shake hands” In many cultures, when two people shake hands, it confirms their agreement. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification](#)
- [son](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**15** When Jehu had left there, he met Jehonadab son of Recab coming to meet him. Jehu greeted him and said to him, “Is your heart with me, as my heart is with yours?” Jehonadab answered, “It is.” Jehu said, “If it is, give me your hand.” So he gave Jehu his hand, and Jehu took Jehonadab up with him into the chariot.

## 2 Kings 10:16

### see my zeal

The word “zeal” may be expressed as an adjective. Alternate translation: “see how zealous I am” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- walk, walked

### ULT

**16** Jehu said, “Come with me and see my zeal for Yahweh.” So he had Jonadab ride along with him in his chariot.

## 2 Kings 10:17

### royal line

“entire royal family”

### just as was told them before by the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken to Elijah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to fulfill the prophecy that Elijah had spoken, which Yahweh gave to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### ULT

**17** When he came to Samaria, Jehu killed all who remained from Ahab’s descendants in Samaria, until he had destroyed Ahab’s royal line, just as was told them before by the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken to Elijah.

## 2 Kings 10:18

### gathered all the people together

“called all the people and had them come to where he was”

### all the people together

“all the people of Samaria”

### serve him much

“serve him much more than Ahab”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- Jehu
- Jehu
- people, people group
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**18** Then Jehu gathered all the people together and said to them, “Ahab served Baal a little, but Jehu will serve him much.”

## 2 Kings 10:19

### Let no one be left out

“Do not leave anyone out”

### Whoever does not come will not live

This means that if they do not come they will be executed. Alternate translation: “We will execute anyone who does not come” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- life, live, living, alive
- perish
- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jehu
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**19** Now therefore call to me all the prophets of Baal, all his worshipers, and all his priests. Let no one be left out, for I have a great sacrifice to offer to Baal. Whoever does not come will not live.” But Jehu did this deceitfully, with the intent to kill the worshipers of Baal.

## 2 Kings 10:20

### Set a time

This means to designate and prepare a period of time for something. In this case they were to prepare for an assembly for Baal. Alternate translation: "Prepare" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Jehu
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Jehu said, "Set a time to have an assembly for Baal." So they announced it.

## 2 Kings 10:21

### Then Jehu sent

This means that he sent messengers to take this message throughout the land. Alternate translation: "Then Jehu sent messengers" or "Then Jehu sent the message" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### so that there was not a man left who did not come

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "so that every worshiper of Baal was there" or "so that every man came" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### it was filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they filled it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jehu
- house, household
- house, household
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**21** Then Jehu sent throughout all Israel and all the worshipers of Baal came, so that there was not a man left who did not come. They came into the temple of Baal, and it was filled from one end to another.



## 2 Kings 10:22

### who kept the priest's wardrobe

Here "to keep" something means to care for it and oversee it.  
Alternate translation: "who was in charge of the priest's wardrobe"  
or "who cared for the priest's wardrobe" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)
- [robe](#), [robed](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Jehu said to the man who kept the priest's wardrobe, "Bring out robes for all the worshipers of Baal." So the man brought out robes to them.

## 2 Kings 10:23

### he said to the worshipers of Baal

“Jehu said to the people who were in the temple to worship Baal”

### but the worshipers of Baal alone

“but that only worshipers of Baal are here”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Jehu
- house, household
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So Jehu went with Jehonadab son of Recab into the house of Baal, and he said to the worshipers of Baal, “Search and make sure that there is no one here with you from the servants of Yahweh, but the worshipers of Baal alone.”

## 2 Kings 10:24

### If any of the men whom I bring into your hands escapes

Here the “hands” of the men refer to their “control.” By being stationed around the temple they were in control of the situation and it was up to them whether people were able to escape or not. Alternate translation: “If any of these men that I brought into your control escapes” or “If any of the men that are inside gets away” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### whoever lets that man escape, his life will be taken for the life of the one who escaped

“we will kill the man who let him escape”

### his life will be taken

This can be stated in active form. This is a polite way to refer to a person being killed. Alternate translation: “we will take his life” or “we will kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### for the life of the one

“in exchange for the life of the man.” Here this man is referred to by his “life” to emphasize that he did not die. Alternate translation: “for the man” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- save, saved, safe, salvation
- Jehu
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- hand
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then they went in to offer sacrifices and burnt offerings. Now Jehu had chosen eighty men who were standing outside, and he told them, “If any of the men whom I bring into your hands escapes, whoever lets that man escape, his life will be taken for the life of the one who escaped.”

## 2 Kings 10:25

### he said to the guard and to the captains

You may need to state that Jehu came out of the temple before he spoke to the guard. Alternate translation: “he went back outside of the temple of Baal and said to the guards and captains” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### with the edge of the sword

The men used swords to kill the worshipers of Baal. This phrase refers to their swords. Alternate translation: “with their swords” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### threw them out

This means that threw the dead bodies of the people out of the temple. Alternate translation: “threw their dead bodies out of the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehu](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> So then as soon as Jehu finished offering the burnt offering, he said to the guard and to the captains, “Go in and kill them. Let no one come out.” So they killed them with the edge of the sword, and the guard and the captains threw them out and went into the inner room of the house of Baal.

## 2 Kings 10:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [house](#), [household](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> They dragged out the stone pillars that were in the house of Baal, and they burned them.

## 2 Kings 10:27

### made it a latrine

“made it a public toilet” A latrine is a bathroom, or a toilet area, usually for a camp or buildings used to house soldiers.

### which it is to this day

This means that something has remained in a certain condition until the present time. Alternate translation: “and since then it has always been that way” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [house](#), [household](#)

### ULT

**27** Then they broke down the pillar of Baal, and destroyed the house of Baal and made it a latrine, which it is to this day.

## 2 Kings 10:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jehu

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> That is how Jehu destroyed Baal worship from Israel.

## 2 Kings 10:29

### did not leave the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

This speaks of Jehu committing the same sins that Jeroboam committed, as if Jeroboam's sins were a place that Jehu did not leave. Alternate translation: "did not stop committing the kinds of sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had committed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But Jehu did not leave the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, by which he made Israel sin—that is, the worship of the golden calves in Bethel and Dan.

### Nebat

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Kings 3:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [gold, golden](#)



## 2 Kings 10:30

### in executing

“in carrying out” or “in accomplishing”

### what was right in my eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what I judge to be right” or “what I consider to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the house of Ahab

Here Ahab’s “house” refers to his “family.” Alternate translation: “the family of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### all that was in my heart

Here the “heart” represents “desire.” Alternate translation: “all that I desired for you to do” or “all that I wanted you to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### sit on the throne

Sitting on the throne represents ruling as king. Alternate translation: “be the kings” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to the fourth generation

This refers to his son, grandson, great-grandson, and great-great-grandson. Alternate translation: “to the 4th generation” or “for four more generations” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So Yahweh said to Jehu, “Because you have done well in executing what was right in my eyes, and have done to the house of Ahab according to all that was in my heart, your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation.”

## 2 Kings 10:31

### Jehu took no care to walk in the law of Yahweh

Here “walking” refers to “living.” Alternate translation: “Jehu was not careful to live according to the law of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

### with all his heart

Here the “heart” refers to a person’s will and desire. Alternate translation: “in everything that he did” or “with all of his will” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam

To “turn away” from something means to stop doing it. Alternate translation: “Jehu did not stop from sinning in the same ways as Jeroboam” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> But Jehu took no care to walk in the law of Yahweh, the God of Israel, with all his heart. He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam, by which he made Israel sin.

## 2 Kings 10:32

### began to cut off regions from Israel

“began to cause the territory controlled by Israel to become smaller”

### regions

areas of land

### Hazael defeated

Here “Hazael” refers to himself and his army. Alternate translation: “Hazael and his army” or “King Hazael’s Aramean army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Hazael

See how you translated this king’s name in [2 Kings 8:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> In those days Yahweh began to cut off regions from Israel, and Hazael defeated the Israelites at the borders of Israel,

## 2 Kings 10:33

### from the Jordan eastward

“from the land east of the Jordan”

### Aroer ... Bashan

These are all names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Arnon

“the Arnon River” This is the name of a river. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Bashan](#)
- [Gilead, Gileadite](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [earth, land](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> from the Jordan eastward, all the land of Gilead, the Gadites, and the Reubenites, and the Manassites, from Aroer, which is by the Valley of the Arnon, through Gilead to Bashan.

## 2 Kings 10:34

### are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jehu, and all that he did, and all his power, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

## 2 Kings 10:35

### Jehu slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in Samaria

This means that Jehu died. This speaks of him being buried where his ancestors were buried as if he were sleeping with them. Alternate translation: "Jehu died and they buried him in Samaria, where they had also buried his ancestors" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Jehoahaz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jehu
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Jehu slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in Samaria. Then Jehoahaz his son became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 10:36

### The time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty-eight years

“Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria for twenty-eight years”

### twenty-eight years

“28 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jehu](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> The time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty-eight years.

## 2 Kings 11

### 2 Kings 11 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of the spiritual revival in Judah under Joash. The people returned to properly worshipping Yahweh. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Athaliah's evil actions

The mother of the king of Judah, Athaliah, killed all the royal children so that she could rule. She was not able to kill the baby Joash because his aunt hid him in the temple. When Joash was seven years old, the chief priest conspired with the army and made Joash king. They killed Athaliah and destroyed the temple of Baal. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))



## 2 Kings 11:1

### Athaliah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### saw that her son was dead

“became aware that her son was dead”

### she arose and killed all the royal children

Athaliah did not personally kill the children. Alternate translation: “she commanded her servants to kill all the members of Ahaziah’s family who might become king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now when Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son was dead, she arose and killed all the royal children.

## 2 Kings 11:2

**took Joash son of Ahaziah, and hid him away from among the king's sons who were killed, along with his nurse; she put them into a bedroom. They hid him from Athaliah so that he was not killed.**

“took Ahaziah’s very young son Joash and hid him and his nursemaid in a bedroom in the temple. So he was not killed”

### Jehosheba

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Joash

This is the name of a man.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- Athaliah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But Jehosheba, a daughter of King Jehoram and sister of Ahaziah, took Joash son of Ahaziah, and hid him away from among the king’s sons who were killed, along with his nurse; she put them into a bedroom. They hid him from Athaliah so that he was not killed.

## 2 Kings 11:3

**He remained with her six years, hidden in the house of Yahweh, while Athaliah reigned over the land**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Joash and Jehosheba hid him in the house of Yahweh for six years while Athaliah ruled the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### land

This is a metonym for the people who live in the land. Alternate translation: “people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [house, household](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He remained with her six years, hidden in the house of Yahweh, while Athaliah reigned over the land.

## 2 Kings 11:4

### Connecting Statement:

This continues the story of what happens after Joash, the son of King Azariah, was hidden in the temple after all King Azariah's other descendants were killed.

### In the seventh year

"In the seventh year of Athaliah's reign" or "In year 7 of Athaliah's reign" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Jehoiada

the high priest (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the commanders of hundreds

The phrases "commander of hundreds" is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word "hundreds" represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the word translated as "hundreds" does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: "the commanders of military divisions" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Carites

This is the name of a particular group of the royal guards.

### brought them to himself

"had them come to meet with him." Jehoiada, the high priest, had these military men report to him at the temple.

### Then he showed them the king's son

Jehoiada revealed to them that Joash, King Azariah's son, was still alive.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [son](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> In the seventh year, Jehoiada sent messages and brought the commanders of hundreds of the Carites and of the guard, and brought them to himself, into the temple of Yahweh. He made a covenant with them, and he made them swear an oath in the house of Yahweh. Then he showed them the king's son.

## 2 Kings 11:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He commanded them, saying, "This is what you must do. A third of you who come on the Sabbath will keep watch over the king's house,

## 2 Kings 11:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house, household

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> and a third will be at the Sur Gate, and a third at the gate behind the guardhouse.”

## 2 Kings 11:7

### General Information:

Jehoiada continues giving directions to the soldiers who will protect King Joash.

### for the king

They were to keep watch for the purpose of protecting the king from harm. Alternate translation: “in order to protect King Joash” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The two other groups who are not serving on the Sabbath, you must keep the watch over the house of Yahweh for the king.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sabbath
- Yahweh
- house, household
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

## 2 Kings 11:8

### Whoever enters within your ranks

“Anyone who tries to go past you while you are protecting King Joash.” A rank refers to a line of soldiers.

### let him be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You must surround the king, every man with his weapons in his hand. Whoever enters within your ranks, let him be killed. You must stay with the king when he goes out, and when he comes in.

### You must stay with the king when he goes out, and when he comes in

These two opposite things are a merism that refers to everything the king does. Alternate translation: “You must stay near the king at all times” (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)



## 2 Kings 11:9

### the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

### Each one

“Each commander”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So the commanders of hundreds obeyed everything Jehoiada the priest commanded. Each one took his men, those who were to come in to serve on the Sabbath, and those who were to stop serving on that Sabbath; and they came to Jehoiada the priest.

## 2 Kings 11:10

### were in the house of Yahweh

“were stored in the temple”

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- David
- chief, leader
- king, kingship

### ULT

**10** Then Jehoiada the priest gave the commanders of hundreds the spears and shields that belonged to King David and that were in the house of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 11:11

### from the right side of the temple to the left side, near the altar and the temple

Some versions translate the first two occurrences of “temple” as “palace.” These versions say, “from the right side of the palace to the left side of the palace, near the altar and the temple.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- hand
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> So the guards stood, each man with his weapon in his hand, from the right side of the temple to the left side, near the altar and the temple, surrounding the king.

## 2 Kings 11:12

### brought out the king's son Joash

Jehoiada, the high priest, brought king Ahaziah's son, Joash, out from the temple apartment where he had been raised in hiding.

### gave him the covenant decrees

"presented him with the book of the law"

### anointed him

The priest poured olive oil on the head of Joash as a symbol that he was now the king. Alternate translation: "poured some olive oil on Joash's head" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### clapped their hands

Clapping their hands was a sign of the happiness of the people at the anointing of the new king.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

**12** Then Jehoiada brought out the king's son Joash, put the crown on him, and gave him the covenant decrees. Then they made him king and anointed him. They clapped their hands and said, "Long live the king!"

## 2 Kings 11:13

### the noise of the guard

This refers to the noise made by all the soldiers.

### she came to the people in the house of Yahweh

“she came to where the people had gathered at the temple”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Athaliah
- house, household
- people, people group
- people, people group

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> When Athaliah heard the noise of the guard and of the people, she came to the people in the house of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 11:14

### She looked, and, behold, the king was standing

“When she arrived, she was surprised to see King Joash standing”

### by the pillar

“by one of the pillars of the temple”

### as the custom was

“which was the usual place for the king to stand”

### the trumpeters

“the people who played the trumpets”

### Athaliah tore her clothes

She tore her clothes to express that she was very upset and angry. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Treason! Treason!

“You are traitors! You have betrayed me!”

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Athaliah
- declare, proclaim, announce
- earth, land
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- people, people group
- column, pillar
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- trumpet, trumpeters

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> She looked, and, behold, the king was standing by the pillar, as the custom was, and the captains and the trumpeters were by the king. All the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing trumpets. Then Athaliah tore her clothes and shouted, “Treason! Treason!”

## 2 Kings 11:15

### the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

### ULT

**15** Then Jehoiada the priest ordered the commanders of hundreds who were over the army, saying, “Bring her out between the ranks. Anyone who follows her, kill him with the sword.” For the priest had said, “Do not let her be killed in the house of Yahweh.”

### Bring her out between the ranks

“Take her away between two rows of guards” or “Lead her away with a row of soldiers on each side of her.” Ranks are lines or rows of soldiers.

### Anyone who follows her

It is implied that a person who followed her would be trying to help her. Alternate translation: “Anyone who follows to try to rescue her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

## 2 Kings 11:16

### they seized her as she reached the place where the horses enter the palace grounds

Some versions translate this as “the guards seized her and took her to the palace, to the place where horses enter the courtyard.”

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> So they seized her as she reached the place where the horses enter the palace grounds, and there she was killed.

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- die, dead, deadly, death
- hand
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house, household
- king, kingship



## 2 Kings 11:17

### also between the king and the people

“also made a covenant between the king and the people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- cut off, cut down
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- people, people group
- people, people group

### ULT

**17** Then Jehoiada made a covenant between Yahweh and the king and people, that they should be Yahweh’s people, and also between the king and the people.

## 2 Kings 11:18

### all the people of the land

This is a generalization to show that a large group of people tore down the temple of Baal. Alternate translation: a large number of the people of the land” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### the house of Baal

“the temple of Baal”

### Mattan

This is the name of a male priest. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- appoint, appointed
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death
- earth, land
- house, household
- house, household
- people, people group

### ULT

**18** So all the people of the land went to the house of Baal and tore it down. They smashed Baal’s altars and his idol figures to pieces, and they killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of those altars. Then Jehoida the priest appointed guards over the temple of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 11:19

### General Information:

They take the new king, Joash, from the temple to the palace.

### the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division.

Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

### ULT

**19** Jehoida took with him the commanders of hundreds, the Carites, the guard, and all the people of the land, and together they brought down the king from the house of Yahweh and they went into the king’s house, entering by way of the gate of the guards. Joash took his place on the royal throne.

### Carites

This is the name of a particular group of the royal guards.

### brought down the king from the house of Yahweh and they went into the king’s house

“brought the king from the temple to the palace”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

## 2 Kings 11:20

### all the people of the land rejoiced

This is a generalization. It is possible that some did not rejoice. Alternate translation: “many people in the land rejoiced” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### the city was quiet

“the city was calm” or “the city was peaceful”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Athaliah
- earth, land
- house, household
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- sword, swordsmen

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet after Athaliah had been killed with the sword at the king's house.

## 2 Kings 11:21

### Joash was seven years old

“Joash was 7 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Joash was seven years old when he began to reign.

## **2 Kings 12**

### **2 Kings 12 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is the end of the story of the revival in Judah under Joash.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Temple**

Joash repaired the temple. In many ways, the temple represents the relationship between the people and Yahweh. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

## 2 Kings 12:1

### In the seventh year of Jehu

“During year 7 of the reign of Jehu over Israel” (See: [Numbers](#))

### the reign of Joash began

“Joash began to reign over Judah”

### Zibiah

This was the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Zibiah, of Beersheba

“Zibiah, from the city of Beersheba”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the seventh year of Jehu, the reign of Joash began; he reigned for forty years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Zibiah, of Beersheba.

## 2 Kings 12:2

### what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judges to be right” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### instructing him

“teaching him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Joash did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh all the time, because Jehoiada the priest was instructing him.



## 2 Kings 12:3

### But the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But the people did not destroy the high places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### The people still sacrificed and burned incense on the high places

Yahweh forbid the people to worship at these place. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “The people continued to go to places that were unacceptable to Yahweh, to make sacrifices and burn incense” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people, people group](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But the high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burned incense on the high places.

## 2 Kings 12:4

### the money that is brought in as sacred offerings into the house of Yahweh

This refers to money that people gave to support the temple. This money came in three forms that are described in the rest of the sentence.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- life, live, living, alive
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- house, household
- house, household
- silver
- silver
- silver
- silver

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Joash said to the priests, “All the money that is brought in as sacred offerings into the house of Yahweh, that money for which each person is assessed—whether it is the money collected in the census, or the money received from personal vows, or the money brought in by people motivated by Yahweh in their hearts to give—

## 2 Kings 12:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- house, household
- strength, strengthen, strong

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> the priests should receive the money from one of their treasurers and repair whatever damage is found in the temple.”

## 2 Kings 12:6

### by the twenty-third year of King Joash

“when Joash had been king for twenty three years”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- house, household
- king, kingship
- strength, strengthen, strong

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But by the twenty-third year of King Joash, the priests had not repaired anything in the temple.

## 2 Kings 12:7

### Why have you not repaired anything in the temple?

Joash asks this question to rebuke the priests. Alternate translation: "You should have been repairing the temple!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### give it to those who can make the repairs

"pay workers who will do the repairs"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [silver](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then King Joash called for Jehoiada the priest and for the other priests; he said to them, "Why have you not repaired anything in the temple? Now take no more money from your taxpayers, but take what has been collected for repairs of the temple and give it to those who can make the repairs."

## 2 Kings 12:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- house, household
- people, people group
- silver
- strength, strengthen, strong

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So the priests consented to take no more money from the people and not repair the temple themselves.

## 2 Kings 12:9

### Instead, Jehoiada

“Instead of the priests collecting the money, Jehoiada”

### on the right side as one comes into the house of Yahweh

“on the right side of the entrance to the temple”

### put into it

“put into the chest” or “put in the box”

### the money that was brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the money that people brought” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- house, household
- house, household
- silver
- threshold, doorway
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Instead, Jehoiada the priest took a chest, bored a hole in its lid, and set it beside the altar, on the right side as one comes into the house of Yahweh. The priests who were guarding the temple entrance put into it all the money that was brought to the house of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 12:10

### put the money in bags and then count it

Many versions put this in a more logical order such as “count the money and put it in bags.”

### put the money in bags

This could mean: (1) “put the money in bags” or (2) “tied up the money in bags” .

### the money found

“the money that they found in the chest”

### Translation Words - ULT

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- scribe
- Yahweh
- house, household
- king, kingship
- silver
- silver (2)

### ULT

**10** Whenever they saw that there was much money in the chest, the king’s scribe and the high priest would come and put the money in bags and then count it, the money found in the temple of Yahweh.



## 2 Kings 12:11

### weighed out

“counted”

### into the hands of men

Here “hands” refers to the men. Alternate translation: “to men”  
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

### who took care of the temple

“who repaired the temple”

### carpenters

people who build and repair things made of wood

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

**11** They gave the money that was weighed out into the hands of men who took care of the temple of Yahweh. They paid it out to the carpenters and the builders who worked on the temple of Yahweh,

## 2 Kings 12:12

### **masons**

people who build with stone

### **stonecutters**

people who cut stones into the correct size and shape

### **for buying timber and cutting stone**

“to buy wood and to cut stone”

### **for all that was needed to be paid to repair it**

“to pay for all of the needed repairs”

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- house, household
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### **ULT**

<sup>12</sup> and to the masons and the stonecutters, for buying timber and cutting stone to repair the temple of Yahweh, and for all that was needed to be paid to repair it.

## 2 Kings 12:13

### did not pay to make for it any

“was not spent to pay for any of the temple’s”

### silver cups, lamp trimmers, basins, trumpets, or any gold or silver furnishing

These are items that would have been used by the priests for various temple tasks, such as sacrifices or festivals.

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But the money that was brought into the house of Yahweh did not pay to make for it any silver cups, lamp trimmers, basins, trumpets, or any gold or silver furnishing.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household
- silver
- silver
- silver

## 2 Kings 12:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- house, household

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> They gave this money to those who did the work of repairing the house of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 12:15

**they did not require the money paid for repairs to be accounted for by the men who received it and paid it to the workmen**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they did not require the men who received the money and paid the workmen for the repairs to account for the money” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to be accounted for**

to keep a record of how much money was received and spent

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> In addition, they did not require the money paid for repairs to be accounted for by the men who received it and paid it to the workmen, because these men were honest.

## 2 Kings 12:16

### the money for the guilt offerings and the money for the sin offerings was not brought into the temple of Yahweh

It is implied that this money was not used for the repairs. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they did not use the money from the guilt offerings and the sin offerings to pay for the repairs to the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But the money for the guilt offerings and the money for the sin offerings was not brought into the temple of Yahweh, because it belonged to the priests.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- house, household
- silver
- silver

## 2 Kings 12:17

### Hazael king of Aram attacked ... Hazael then turned to attack

This refers to Hazael's army as well as to Hazael. Alternate translation: "Hazael king of Aram and his army attacked ... Then they turned to attack" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then Hazael king of Aram attacked and fought against Gath, and took it. Hazael then turned to attack Jerusalem.

### Hazael

This is the name of the king of the country of Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### took it

"defeated and took control of it"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 12:18

### Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, his fathers

These men were previous kings of Judah. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### set apart

“dedicated”

#### the gold that was found in the storerooms

“the gold that was stored in the storerooms”

#### Then Hazael went away from Jerusalem

The gifts Joash gave Hazael convinced him not to attack Jerusalem. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “So Hazael stopped attacking Jerusalem and left”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Ahaziah
- Jehoshaphat
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Joash king of Judah took all the things that Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, his fathers, kings of Judah, had set apart, and what he had set apart, and all the gold that was found in the storerooms of the houses of Yahweh and of the king and he sent them to Hazael king of Aram. Then Hazael went away from Jerusalem.



## 2 Kings 12:19

### are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> As for the other matters concerning Joash, all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

## 2 Kings 12:20

### Silla

The location of this place is unknown. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house, household](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**20** His servants arose and plotted together; they attacked Joash in Beth Millo, on the way that goes down to Silla.

## 2 Kings 12:21

### Jozabad ... Shimeath ... Jehozabad ... Shomer ... Amaziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### with his ancestors

“in the place where his ancestors were buried”

#### became king in his place

“became the next king of Judah”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [David](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Jozabad <sup>[1]</sup> son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad son of Shomer, his servants, attacked him, and he died. They buried Joash with his ancestors in the city of David, and Amaziah, his son, became king in his place.

12:21 <sup>[1]</sup> .

## **2 Kings 13**

### **2 Kings 13 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This is the last chapter about Elisha.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Elisha's death**

The king of Israel is upset when Elisha is dying. Elisha assures him that he will have three victories over Aram.

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Metaphor**

The king compares the protection that Elisha had given Israel to "The chariot of Israel and the horsemen." (See: [Metaphor](#))

## 2 Kings 13:1

### In the twenty-third year of Joash son of Ahaziah king of Judah

“After Joash had been ruling Judah for almost 23 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### reign over Israel in Samaria

“rule over the kingdom of Israel located in Samaria”

### he reigned seventeen years

“Jehoahaz was king for 17 years”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the twenty-third year of Joash son of Ahaziah king of Judah, Jehoahaz son of Jehu began to reign over Israel in Samaria; he reigned seventeen years.

## 2 Kings 13:2

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation.  
Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### followed the sins of Jeroboam

"did the same sins as Jeroboam"

### Jehoahaz did not turn away from them

Here stopping his sin is spoken of as if he turned away from them. This can also be stated in positive form.  
Alternate translation: "Jehoahaz did not stop doing the sins of Jeroboam" or "Jehoahaz continued to do the same sins as Jeroboam" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Jeroboam

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and followed the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin; and Jehoahaz did not turn away from them.

## 2 Kings 13:3

### The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel

Yahweh becoming angry with Israel is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that burned. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh became very angry with Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### gave them continually into the hand of Hazael king of Aram and into the hand of Ben Hadad son of Hazael

Here "them" refers to Israel and "hand" refers to the power to control them. Alternate translation: "allowed Hazael the king of Aram, and Ben Hadad, his son, to repeatedly defeat the Israelites in battle" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and he gave them continually into the hand of Hazael king of Aram and into the hand of Ben Hadad son of Hazael.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 13:4

### implored Yahweh

“prayed to Yahweh”

### he saw the oppression of Israel, how the king of Aram was oppressing them

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. The abstract noun “oppression” means the same as “the king of Aram was oppressing them.” Alternate translation: “he saw how severely the king of Aram was oppressing Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So Jehoahaz implored Yahweh, and Yahweh listened to him because he saw the oppression of Israel, how the king of Aram was oppressing them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)



## 2 Kings 13:5

### a rescuer

“someone to rescue them”

### they escaped from the hand of the Arameans

Here “hand” refers to the power to control them. Alternate translation: “he enabled them to be free from Aram’s power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So Yahweh gave Israel a rescuer, and they escaped from the hand of the Arameans, and the people of Israel began to live in their homes as they had before.

## 2 Kings 13:6

### they did not depart from the sins of the house of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as if they departed from the sins. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Israel did not stop doing the same sins as Jeroboam had done" or "Israel continued to commit the same sins as Jeroboam had committed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### house of Jeroboam

"the family of Jeroboam"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Nevertheless, they did not depart from the sins of the house of Jeroboam, who caused Israel to sin, and they continued in them; and the Asherah pole remained in Samaria.

## 2 Kings 13:7

### had destroyed them

“had defeated the army of Jehoahaz”

### made them like the chaff at threshing time

The Aramean army had so severely defeated the army of Israel that what remained was so worthless that it is compared to wheat chaff that the laborers walk on at harvest time. Alternate translation: “had crushed them as workers crush chaff under their feet at harvest time” (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The Arameans left Jehoahaz with only fifty horsemen, ten chariots, and ten thousand footmen, for the king of Aram had destroyed them and made them like the chaff at threshing time.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [perish](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

## 2 Kings 13:8

### are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jehoahaz, and all that he did and his power, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 13:9

### slept with his ancestors

This is a polite way of saying that he died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So Jehoahaz slept with his ancestors,  
and they buried him in Samaria.  
Jehoash his son became king in his  
place.

## 2 Kings 13:10

### In the thirty-seventh year of Joash king of Judah

“After Joash had ruled Judah for almost 37 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### the reign of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz began over Israel in Samaria

“Jehoash son of Jehoahaz began to rule over Israel in Samaria”

### Jehoash

This was a king of Israel who was the son of Jehoahaz. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> In the thirty-seventh year of Joash king of Judah, the reign of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz began over Israel in Samaria; he reigned sixteen years.

## 2 Kings 13:11

### He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” represents God’s thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “He did things that Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### He did not leave behind any of the sins of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as if he left behind the sins. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Jehoash did not stop committing the same sins as Jeroboam” or “Jehoash kept committing the same sins as Jeroboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### by which he had made Israel to sin

“by which Jeroboam had caused Israel to sin”

### but he walked in them

To sin is spoken of as if he was walking along a sinful path. Alternate translation: “but Jehoash continued to do these same sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Jeroboam
- walk, walked

### ULT

**11** He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. He did not leave behind any of the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, by which he had made Israel to sin, but he walked in them.

## 2 Kings 13:12

### his might by which he fought against Amaziah king of Judah

Here the strength of Jehoash's army is spoken of as Jehoash's "might." Alternate translation: "the power that his army showed when they fought against the army of Amaziah king of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jehoash, and all that he did, and his might by which he fought against Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?



## 2 Kings 13:13

### Jehoash slept with his ancestors

This a polite way to say that Jehoash died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Jeroboam sat on his throne

Here “sat on his throne” refers to ruling as king. Alternate translation: “Jeroboam became king after him” or “Jeroboam began to rule after him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Jehoash slept with his ancestors, and Jeroboam sat on his throne. Jehoash was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

## 2 Kings 13:14

### wept over him

“wept because Elisha was sick”

### My father, my father

Elisha was not the king’s literal father. King Joash used this term as a sign of respect.

### the chariots of Israel and the horsemen are taking you away

This is a reference to Elijah going to heaven in [2 Kings 2:11](#) and [2 Kings 2:12](#). Joash uses this phrase to say that Elisha was going to die. Alternate translation: “the chariots of Israel and the horsemen are taking you to heaven” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the horsemen

This refers to the men who drove the chariots. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “the drivers of the chariots” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [horseman](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**14** Now Elisha became sick with an illness by which he later died, so Jehoash the king of Israel came down to him and wept over him. He said, “My father, my father, the chariots of Israel and the horsemen are taking you away!”

## 2 Kings 13:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Elisha](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Elisha said to him, "Pick up a bow and some arrows," so Joash picked up a bow and some arrows.

## 2 Kings 13:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Elisha
- hand
- hand
- hand
- hand
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Elisha said to the king of Israel, "Put your hand on the bow," so he put his hand on it. Then Elisha laid his hands on the king's hands.

## 2 Kings 13:17

### General Information:

Elisha continues to talk to Joash, king of Israel.

### Open the window eastward

“open the window that faces east” or “open that window towards the east”

### so he opened it

Since this happens after Joash takes the bow and arrows, he may have had a servant open the window. Alternate translation: “So a servant opened it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he shot

“Joash shot the arrow”

### This is Yahweh’s arrow of victory, the arrow of victory over Aram

The relationship between the arrow and victory can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “This arrow is a sign from Yahweh that he will give you victory over Aram” or “This arrow symbolizes the victory Yahweh will give you over Aram” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Aphek

This was a city in the land of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

### ULT

**17** Elisha said, “Open the window eastward,” so he opened it. Then Elisha said, “Shoot!”, and he shot. Elisha said, “This is Yahweh’s arrow of victory, the arrow of victory over Aram, for you will attack the Arameans in Aphek until you have consumed them.”

## 2 Kings 13:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- earth, land
- king, kingship

### ULT

**18** Then Elisha said, "Take the arrows," so Joash took them. He said to the king of Israel, "Strike the ground with them," and he struck the ground three times, then stopped.

## 2 Kings 13:19

### But the man of God was angry with him

“But Elisha was angry with King Joash”

### until you annihilated it

“until you completely destroyed it” or “until they were completely wiped out”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

### ULT

**19** But the man of God was angry with him and said, “You should have hit the ground five or six times. Then you would have attacked Aram until you annihilated it, but now you will attack Aram only three times.”

## 2 Kings 13:20

### Now

This word marks a break in the main story line. This new section gives background information for the part of the story that follows. (See: [Background Information](#))

### at the beginning of the year

“each year during spring”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- Moab, Moabite
- die, dead, deadly, death

### ULT

**20** Then Elisha died, and they buried him. Now groups of Moabites invaded the land at the beginning of the year.



## 2 Kings 13:21

### As they were burying a certain man

“As some Israelites were burying a man’s body”

### they saw a group of Moabites

It can be made explicit that they were afraid of the Moabites.  
Alternate translation: “they saw a group of Moabite raiders coming toward them and they were afraid” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Elisha’s grave

“the grave where Elisha was buried”

### As soon as the man touched Elisha’s bones

Here “the man” refers to his dead body. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “As soon as the dead man’s body touched the bones of Elisha” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he revived and stood up on his feet

“the dead man came back to life and stood up”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> As they were burying a certain man, they saw a group of Moabites, so they threw the body into Elisha’s grave. As soon as the man touched Elisha’s bones, he revived and stood up on his feet.

## 2 Kings 13:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Hazael king of Aram oppressed Israel all the days of Jehoahaz.

## 2 Kings 13:23

### But Yahweh was gracious to Israel, and had compassion on them and concern for them

It may be helpful to divide this sentence into shorter parts. Alternate translation: "But Yahweh was very kind to the Israelite people. He helped them"

### So Yahweh did not destroy them

Yahweh's covenant is the reason he did not destroy Israel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "This is the reason that Yahweh did not destroy them" or "Because of his covenant, Yahweh did not destroy them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### has not driven them away from his presence

Yahweh's rejection is spoken of as if he had physically driven Israel away from where he was. Alternate translation: "has not rejected them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But Yahweh was gracious to Israel, and had compassion on them and concern for them, because of his covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. So Yahweh did not destroy them, and he still has not driven them away from his presence.

## 2 Kings 13:24

### Hazael ... Ben Hadad

These are names of kings. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### became king in his place

“became king after him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Hazael king of Aram died, and Ben Hadad his son became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 13:25

### Jehoash ... Jehoahaz

These are names of kings. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jehoash attacked him three times

Here “Jehoash” and “him” refer to the kings and their armies.  
Alternate translation: “Jehoash’s army attacked Ben Hadad’s army three times” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### he recovered those cities of Israel

“Jehoash took back control of the Israelite cities that Ben Hadad had captured”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(3\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Jehoash son of Jehoahaz took back from Ben Hadad son of Hazael the cities that had been taken from Jehoahaz his father by war. Jehoash attacked him three times, and he recovered those cities of Israel.

## **2 Kings 14**

### **2 Kings 14 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

The text begins to alternate between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah again.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Pride**

Pride in one's success can make a person attempt and fail at something else. Amaziah defeated Edom so he wanted to fight Israel. But Israel defeated him and thoroughly humiliated him.

## 2 Kings 14:1

### In the second year of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel

“When Jehoash son of Jehoahaz had been king of Israel for almost two years”

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the second year of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel, Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, began to reign.

### Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, began to reign

“Amaziah son of Joash, became the king of Judah”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- son
- son
- Amaziah
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

## 2 Kings 14:2

### He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign

“He was 25 years old when he became king” (See: [Numbers](#))

### he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem

“he was the king in Jerusalem for 29 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Jehoaddan

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jehoaddan, of Jerusalem.



## 2 Kings 14:3

### He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, yet not like David his father

Here “the eyes of Yahweh” refers to his sight, and his sight refers to his judgment. Alternate translation: “Amaziah did many things that pleased Yahweh, but he did not do as many things that pleased Yahweh as King David had done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, yet not like David his father. He did everything that Joash, his father, had done.

### He did everything that Joash, his father, had done

Joash obeyed Yahweh and did good things. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “He did the same good things that his father Joash had done” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

## 2 Kings 14:4

### General Information:

The story of Amaziah's rule as king of Judah continues.

### But the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. The high places were used for pagan worship. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "But he did not remove the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### sacrificed and burned incense at the high places

The high places were used for pagan worship. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "sacrificed and burned incense to pagan gods at the high places"(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people, people group](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But the high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burned incense at the high places.

## 2 Kings 14:5

### It came about

This is used to introduce a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### as soon as his rule was well established

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as soon as Amaziah securely established his royal rule and kingly authority” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### he killed the servants

Amaziah probably ordered other people to kill the officials. Alternate translation: “he made his servants execute the officials” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- strength, strengthen, strong

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> It came about that as soon as his rule was well established, he killed the servants who had murdered his father, the king.

## 2 Kings 14:6

### General Information:

The narrator tells about what king Amaziah did after his father King Joash was murdered.

### Yet he did not put the sons of the murderers to death

King Amaziah did not order his servants to kill the children of the men who killed his father. If he was going to have them executed though, he would have commanded his servants do it, he would not have done it himself. Alternate translation: "But he did not tell his servants to execute those officials' children" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### The fathers must not be put to death for their children, neither must the children be put to death for their parents

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People must not kill the fathers for the sins of their children, and they must not kill the children for the sins of their parents" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### every person must be put to death for his own sin

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "every person must die for his own sin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Yet he did not put the sons of the murderers to death; instead, he acted according to what was written in the book of the law Moses, as Yahweh had commanded, saying, "The fathers must not be put to death for their children, neither must the children be put to death for their parents. Instead, every person must be put to death for his own sin."

## 2 Kings 14:7

### He killed

Here “He” refers to his army. Alternate translation: “Amaziah’s army killed” or “Amaziah’s soldiers killed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ten thousand soldiers

“10,000 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Valley of Salt

This is the name of a place that is located south of the Dead Sea.

### he also took Sela in war

Here the word “he” refers to King amaziah and represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: “King Amaziah’s army captured the city of Sela” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Sela ... Joktheel

They renamed the city of Sela. The new name was Joktheel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He killed ten thousand soldiers of Edom in the Valley of Salt; he also took Sela in war and called it Joktheel, which is what it is called to this day.

## 2 Kings 14:8

**Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu king of Israel, saying, “Come, let us meet each other face to face in battle.”**

Here “each other” also included their armies. Alternate translation: “Then Amaziah sent messengers to King Jehoash of Israel, saying, ‘Come here and let us and our armies fight each other in battle.’” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu king of Israel, saying, “Come, let us meet each other face to face in battle.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

## 2 Kings 14:9

### A thistle that was in Lebanon ... trampled down the thistle

This is a word picture and a riddle. A cedar tree is great and a thistle is small and worthless. Jehoash compares himself to the cedar and Amaziah to the thistle and warns Amaziah not to attack. If you have a similar comparison in your own language, you can use it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### thistle

type of bush with thorns

### saying, 'Give your daughter to my son for a wife,'

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "asking the cedar to give his daughter to the thistle's son for a wife" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship \(2\)](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But Jehoash the king of Israel sent messengers back to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, "A thistle that was in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar in Lebanon, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son for a wife,' but a wild beast in Lebanon walked by and trampled down the thistle."

## 2 Kings 14:10

### You have indeed attacked Edom

This is the warning part of Jehoash's message to Amaziah. "Amaziah, you have definitely defeated Edom"

### your heart has lifted you up

This is an idiom that refers to being proud. Alternate translation: "you are very proud of what you have done" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Take pride in your victory

"Be content with your victory"

### for why should you cause yourself trouble and fall

Jehoash uses this question to warn Amaziah not to attack him. Alternate translation: "for you should not cause trouble for yourself and suffer defeat" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [heart](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

#### ULT

**10** You have indeed attacked Edom, and your heart has lifted you up. Take pride in your victory, but stay at home, for why should you cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you?"



## 2 Kings 14:11

### But Amaziah would not listen

Here “listen” refers to obeying the warning. Alternate translation: “However, Amaziah would not obey Jehoash’s warning” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### So Jehoash king of Israel attacked ... Amaziah king of Judah met each other

The armies of these kings went to battle with them. Alternate translation: “So Jehoash and his army went to fight Amaziah and his army and they met each other” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Beth Shemesh

This is a town in Judah near the border of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#) (2)

### ULT

**11** But Amaziah would not listen. So Jehoash king of Israel attacked and he and Amaziah king of Judah met each other face to face at Beth Shemesh, which belongs to Judah.

## 2 Kings 14:12

### Judah was defeated by Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Israel defeated Judah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### every man fled home

"all the men in the army of Judah ran home"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Judah was defeated by Israel, and every man fled home.

## 2 Kings 14:13

### General Information:

This is what happened after the army of Israel defeated the army of Judah at Beth Shemesh.

### He came

Here “He” refers to Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “Jehoash and his army came ... Jehoash’s soldiers took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Ephraim Gate ... Corner Gate

There are the names of gates in the wall of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### four hundred cubits

“about 180 meters” (See: [Numbers](#))

### cubits

A cubit was about 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship \(2\)](#)

### ULT

**13** Jehoash king of Israel, captured Amaziah, king of Judah son of Jehoash son of Ahaziah, at Beth Shemesh. He came to Jerusalem and tore down the wall of Jerusalem from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate, four hundred cubits in distance.

## 2 Kings 14:14

### He took

Here “He” refers to Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “Jehoash and his army came ... Jehoash’s soldiers took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### with hostages also, and returned to Samaria

This implies that Jehoash needed to take these hostages to prevent Amaziah from attacking again. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “and they also took to Samaria some prisoners to make sure that Amaziah would cause them no more trouble” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**14** He took all the gold and silver, all the objects that were found in the house of Yahweh, and the valuable things in the king’s palace, with hostages also, and returned to Samaria.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Samaria, Samaritan
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- return, turn back
- silver

## 2 Kings 14:15

### are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jehoash, all that he did, his power, and how he fought with Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

## 2 Kings 14:16

### Then Jehoash slept with his ancestors

This is a polite way to say that he died. Alternate translation: "Then Jehoash died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### became king in his place

"became king after him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

**16** Then Jehoash slept with his ancestors and was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel, and Jeroboam, his son, became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 14:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- Amaziah
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, lived fifteen years after the death of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel.

## 2 Kings 14:18

### are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> As for the other matters concerning Amaziah, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?



## 2 Kings 14:19

### They made a conspiracy against Amaziah in Jerusalem

A conspiracy is a secret plan to do harm to someone or something.  
Alternate translation: "Some people in Jerusalem plotted against Amaziah"

### Lachish

This is a city in southwestern Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### but they sent men after him to Lachish

The men who made the conspiracy sent other men to follow Amaziah to Lachish.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> They made a conspiracy against Amaziah in Jerusalem, and he fled to Lachish. He fled to Lachish, but they sent men after him to Lachish and killed him there.

## 2 Kings 14:20

### General Information:

This is what happened after the death of King Amaziah.

### They brought him back on horses

“They brought Amaziah’s body back on horses”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horse, warhorse, horseback

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> They brought him back on horses, and he was buried with his ancestors in the city of David.

## 2 Kings 14:21

**All the people of Judah took Azariah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah**

This is a generalization. Some people may not have wanted him to be king. Alternate translation: "The people of Judah took the 16 year-old Azariah and made him king after his father, Amaziah" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> All the people of Judah took Azariah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah.

## Azariah

This king is better known today by the name "Uzziah."

## Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Amaziah
- Judea, Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group
- reign, rule

## 2 Kings 14:22

### It was Azariah who rebuilt Elath

Azariah did not do this alone. Alternate translation: “It was Azariah who ordered Elath to be rebuilt” or “It was Azariah who supervised the rebuilding of Elath” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Elath

a city in Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### restored it to Judah

“returned it to Judah”

### slept with his ancestors

This is a poetic way to say he died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship
- return, turn back

### ULT

**22** It was Azariah who rebuilt Elath and restored it to Judah, after King Amaziah slept with his ancestors.

## 2 Kings 14:23

### General Information:

This describes what King Uzziah did after he became king.

### In the fifteenth year of Amaziah

“In year 15 of Amaziah” (See: [Numbers](#))

### forty-one years

“41 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> In the fifteenth year of Amaziah son of Joash king of Judah, Jeroboam son of Jehoash king of Israel began to reign in Samaria; he reigned forty-one years.

## 2 Kings 14:24

### evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” is a metaphor for judging or considering. Alternate translation: “evil according to Yahweh” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### He did not depart from any of the sins of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as leaving a path. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “He did not stop committing the same sins as Jeroboam” or “He continued to commit the same sins as Jeroboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Jeroboam

#### ULT

**24** He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. He did not depart from any of the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin.

## 2 Kings 14:25

### He restored the border

This means his army restored the land up to the border. Alternate translation: "His soldiers conquered again some of the territory that had previously belonged to Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Lebo Hamath

This city was also called Hamath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Sea of the Arabah

"the Dead Sea"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites \(2\)](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Arabah](#)
- [Jonah](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**25** He restored the border of Israel from Lebo Hamath to the Sea of the Arabah, following the commands of the word of Yahweh, the God of Israel, which he had spoken through his servant Jonah son of Amittai, the prophet, who was from Gath Hopher.

## 2 Kings 14:26

### it was very bitter

Suffering that was difficult is spoken of as if it had a bitter taste.  
Alternate translation: "it was very difficult" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### there was no rescuer for Israel

"there was no one who could rescue Israel"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)

### ULT

**26** For Yahweh saw the suffering of Israel, that it was very bitter for everyone, both slave and free, and that there was no rescuer for Israel.



## 2 Kings 14:27

### blot out

To completely destroy Israel is spoken of as if Yahweh wiped them away with a cloth. Alternate translation: “completely destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the name of Israel

Here “the name of Israel” represents all of Israel and its inhabitants. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### under heaven

“on earth”

### he saved them by the hand of Jeroboam son of Jehoash

Here “hand” is a metonym for power. Also, “Jehoash” is a synecdoche representing Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “he enabled King Jeroboam and his army to rescue them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**27** So Yahweh said that he would not blot out the name of Israel under heaven; instead, he saved them by the hand of Jeroboam son of Jehoash.

## 2 Kings 14:28

### are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jeroboam, all that he did, his power, how he waged war and recovered Damascus and Hamath, which had belonged to Judah, for Israel, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

## 2 Kings 14:29

### Jeroboam slept with his ancestors, with the kings of Israel

This is a polite way to say that he died and was buried. Alternate translation: "Jeroboam died, and was buried where the other kings of Israel were buried" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Jeroboam slept with his ancestors, with the kings of Israel, and Zechariah his son became king in his place.

## **2 Kings 15**

### **2 Kings 15 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Israel's evil**

Israel assassinated one king after another. The Assyrians began attacking Israel. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

## 2 Kings 15:1

### In the twenty-seventh year of Jeroboam

It can be stated clearly that this is the twenty-seventh year of his reign. Alternate translation: “In year 27 of the reign of Jeroboam” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Azariah

This king is better known today by the name “Uzziah.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the twenty-seventh year of Jeroboam king of Israel, Azariah son of Amaziah king of Judah began to reign.

## 2 Kings 15:2

### Jekoliah

This is the name of Azariah's mother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Azariah was sixteen years old when he began to reign, and he reigned for fifty-two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jekoliah, and she was from Jerusalem.

## 2 Kings 15:3

### He did what was right

“Azariah did what was right”

### what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what was right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just as his father Amaziah had done.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

## 2 Kings 15:4

### the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one took away the high places” or “Azariah did not have anyone take the high places away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### were not taken away

Being taken away represents being destroyed. Alternate translation: “were not destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people, people group](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> However, the high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burned incense at the high places.



## 2 Kings 15:5

### to the day of his death

The abstract noun “death” can be expressed with the verb “die.”  
Alternate translation: “until the day he died” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Jotham, the king’s son, was over the household

The word “household” refers to the people living in the king’s palace. Because Azariah was a leper, he had to live in a separate house. So his son, Jotham, took charge over the palace.

### was over the household

Being over the household represents having authority over those in it. Alternate translation: “was in charge of the household” or “had authority over those in Azariah’s palace” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh afflicted the king so that he was a leper to the day of his death and lived in a separate house. Jotham, the king’s son, was over the household and ruled the people of the land.

## 2 Kings 15:6

### are they not written ... Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Azariah is in this other book. This can also be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: "they are written ... Judah." or "you can read about them ... Judah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

6 As for the other matters concerning Azariah, all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

## 2 Kings 15:7

### Azariah slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: "Azariah died as his ancestors had" or "like his ancestors, Azariah died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### they buried him with his ancestors

"his family buried him where his ancestors had been buried"

### became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Azariah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Jotham
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So Azariah slept with his ancestors; they buried him with his ancestors in the city of David. Jotham, his son, became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 15:8

### In the thirty-eighth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-eighth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 38 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> In the thirty-eighth year of Azariah king of Judah, Zechariah son of Jeroboam reigned over Israel in Samaria for six months.

### Zechariah son of Jeroboam

This Jeroboam was the second king of Israel that had that name. He was the son of King Jehoash.

### reigned over Israel in Samaria for six months

Samaria is the city that Zechariah lived in when he was king of Israel. Alternate translation: "lived in Samaria and reigned over Israel for six months"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 15:9

### He did what was evil

“Zechariah did what was evil”

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as his fathers had done. He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin.

### He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: “Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat” or “He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Jeroboam son of Nebat

This Jeroboam was the first king of the ten northern tribes that made up the kingdom of Israel.

### who had caused Israel to sin

Here the word “Israel” represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “who had caused the people of Israel to sin” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

## 2 Kings 15:10

### Shallum ... Jabesh

These are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### against Zechariah

“against King Zechariah”

### Ibleam

This was the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Then he became king in his place

“Then Shallum became king in Zechariah’s place”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death
- people, people group
- reign, rule

#### ULT

**10** Shallum son of Jabesh conspired against Zechariah, attacked him in Ibleam, and killed him. Then he became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 15:11

### they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> As for the other matters concerning Zechariah, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 15:12

### This was the word of Yahweh

It can be stated clearly that the events described in verse 10 fulfilled the word of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “What happened to Zechariah was according to the word of Yahweh” or “What happened to Zechariah fulfilled the word of Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation

Sitting on the throne represents being the king. Alternate translation: “Your descendants will be the kings of Israel for four generations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

#### ULT

**12** This was the word of Yahweh that he spoke to Jehu, saying, “Your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation.” That is what happened.



## 2 Kings 15:13

### in the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-ninth year of his reign. Alternate translation: “in year 39 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Shallum son of Jabesh began to reign in the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah, and he reigned only one month in Samaria.

### Shallum ... Jabesh

These are the names of two men. See how you translated these names in [2 Kings 15:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### he reigned only one month in Samaria

Samaria is the city that he lived in when was king of Israel. Alternate translation: “Shallum lived in Samaria and reigned over Israel for only one month” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

## 2 Kings 15:14

### Menaahem ... Gadi

These are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."

Alternate translation: "became king instead of Shallum" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**14** Menaahem son of Gadi went up from Tirzah to Samaria. There he attacked Shallum son of Jabesh, in Samaria. He killed him and became king in his place.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Tirzah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- reign, rule

## 2 Kings 15:15

### the conspiracy that he formed

The abstract noun “conspiracy” can be translated with the verb “plan.” It can be stated clearly what this conspiracy was. Alternate translation: “how he planned to murder King Zechariah” or “and how he murdered King Zechariah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> As for the other matters concerning Shallum and the conspiracy that he formed, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

### they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 15:16

### Tiphsah

This is the name of a city. Some versions have "Tappuah," which is the name of another city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Tirzah](#)

### ULT

**16** Then Menahem attacked Tiphsah and all who were there, and the borders around Tirzah, because they did not open up the city to him. So he attacked it, and he ripped open all the pregnant women in that village. <sup>[1]</sup>

## 2 Kings 15:17

### In the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-ninth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 39 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> In the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah, Menahem son of Gadi began to reign over Israel; he reigned ten years in Samaria.

## 2 Kings 15:18

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**18** He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. For his whole life, he did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin.

### For his whole life

The abstract noun "life" can be translated with the verb "live." Alternate translation: "The whole time that he lived" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### he did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### who had caused Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: "who had caused the people of Israel to sin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Jeroboam

## 2 Kings 15:19

### Pul the king of Assyria came against the land

The phrase “Pul the king of Assyria” represents Pul and his army. Alternate translation: “Pul the king of Assyria came with his army against the land” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Pul the king of Assyria

Pul is the name of a man who was king of Assyria. He was also named Tiglath-Pileser. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### came against the land

The phrase “came against” is an idiom meaning to attack. “The land” refers to the land of Israel and represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “came with his army to attack the people of Israel” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### one thousand talents of silver

“1000 talents of silver.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “thirty-three thousand kilograms of silver” or “thirty-three metric tons of silver” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

### so that Pul’s support might be with him

The abstract noun “support” can be translated with the verb “support.” Alternate translation: “so that Pul might support him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### to strengthen the kingdom of Israel in his hand

Having the kingdom in his hand represents ruling the kingdom. Alternate translation: “to strengthen his rule over the kingdom of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

**19** Then Pul the king of Assyria came against the land, and Menahem gave Pul one thousand talents of silver, so that Pul’s support might be with him to strengthen the kingdom of Israel in his hand.

## 2 Kings 15:20

### exacted this money from Israel

“took this money from Israel”

### fifty shekels of silver

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “six hundred grams of silver” or “three-fifths of a kilogram of silver” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### did not stay there in the land

“did not stay there in Israel”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire \(2\)](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Menahem exacted this money from Israel by requiring each of the wealthy men to pay fifty shekels of silver to him to give to the king of Assyria. So the king of Assyria turned back and did not stay there in the land.



## 2 Kings 15:21

### are they not written ... Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Menahem is in this other book. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> As for the other matters concerning Menahem, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 15:22

### Menahem slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 10:35](#). Alternate translation: “Menahem died as his ancestors had” or “like his ancestors, Menahem died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

#### ULT

**22** So Menahem slept with his ancestors, and Pekahiah his son became king in his place.

### Pekahiah

This a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Menahem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

## 2 Kings 15:23

### In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the fiftieth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 50 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Pekahiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah, Pekahiah son of Menahem began to reign over Israel in Samaria; he reigned two years.

## 2 Kings 15:24

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**24** He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. He did not leave behind the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, by which he had caused Israel to sin.

### He did not leave behind the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Leaving behind sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Pekahiah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he had caused Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Jeroboam

## 2 Kings 15:25

### Pekah ... Remaliah

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### conspired against him

"secretly planned to kill Pekahiah"

### fifty men

"50 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Argob ... Arieah

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the citadel of the king's palace

"the fortified part of the king's palace" or "the safe place in the king's palace"

### became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Pekahiah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Pekahiah had an officer named Pekah son of Remaliah, who conspired against him. Along with fifty men of Gilead, Pekah killed Pekahiah as well as Argob and Arieah in Samaria, in the citadel of the king's palace. Pekah killed Pekahiah and became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 15:26

### they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> As for the other matters concerning Pekahiah, all that he did, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 15:27

### In the fifty-second year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the fifty-second year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 52 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> In the fifty-second year of Azariah king of Judah, Pekah son of Remaliah began to reign over Israel in Samaria; he reigned twenty years.

## 2 Kings 15:28

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Jeroboam

#### ULT

**28** He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin.



## 2 Kings 15:29

### In the days of Pekah king of Israel

It can be stated clearly that this refers to the time of Pekah's reign. Alternate translation: "In the days of the reign of Pekah king of Israel" or "During the time that Pekah was king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Tiglath-Pileser

In [2 Kings 15:19](#) this man was called "Pul." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ijon ... Abel Beth Maacah ... Janoah ... Kedesh ... Hazor ... Gilead ... Galilee ... Naphtali

These are the names of cities or regions. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### He carried away the people to Assyria

Here "He" refers to Tiglath-Pileser and represents him and his army. Carrying the people to Assyria represents forcing them to go to Assyria. Alternate translation: "He and his army forced the people to go to Assyria (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### the people

It can be stated clearly which people these are. Alternate translation: "the people of those places" or "the people of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Gilead, Gileadite](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

#### ULT

**29** In the days of Pekah king of Israel, Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria came and took Ijon, Abel Beth Maacah, Janoah, Kedesh, Hazor, Gilead, Galilee, and all the land of Naphtali. He carried away the people to Assyria.

## 2 Kings 15:30

### Hoshea ... Elah

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a conspiracy

A conspiracy is a secret plan by a group to do harm to someone or something.

### He attacked him and killed him

"Hoshea attacked Pekah and killed him"

### became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Pekah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### in the twentieth year of Jotham son of Uzziah

It can be stated clearly that this is the twentieth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 20 of the reign of Jotham son of Uzziah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Hoshea](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So Hoshea son of Elah formed a conspiracy against Pekah son of Remaliah. He attacked him and killed him. Then he became king in his place, in the twentieth year of Jotham son of Uzziah.

## 2 Kings 15:31

### they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> As for the other matters concerning Pekah, all that he did, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 15:32

### In the second year of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel

It can be stated clearly that this is the second year of his reign.  
Alternate translation: "In year 2 of the reign of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> In the second year of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel, Jotham son of Azariah, king of Judah began to reign.

### Jotham son of Azariah, king of Judah began to reign

"Jotham son of Azariah, king of Judah became king of Judah"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 15:33

### He was twenty-five years old ... sixteen years

“He was 25 years old...16 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Jerushah

This is a woman’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zadok](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother’s name was Jerushah; she was the daughter of Zadok.

## 2 Kings 15:34

### what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what was right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Jotham did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. He followed the example of all his father Azariah had done.

## 2 Kings 15:35

### the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one took away the high places” or “Jotham did not have anyone take the high places away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### were not taken away

Being taken away represents being destroyed. Alternate translation: “were not destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Jotham built the upper gate

“Jotham built” represents Jotham making his workers build it. Alternate translation: “Jotham had his workers build the upper gate” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> However, the high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burned incense at the high places. Jotham built the upper gate of the house of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 15:36

### are they not written ... Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Jotham is in this other book. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jotham, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jotham](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)



## 2 Kings 15:37

### In those days

This refers to a time period. What time period this refers to can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "During that time" or "While Jotham was king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Rezin

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Pekah ... Remaliah

These are men's names. Pekah was the king of Israel. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:37](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Judah
- king, kingship

### ULT

**37** In those days Yahweh began to send against Judah Rezin the king of Aram, and Pekah son of Remaliah.

## 2 Kings 15:38

### Jotham slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: "Jotham died as his ancestors had" or "Like his ancestors, Jotham died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."  
Alternate translation: "became king instead of Jotham" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#) (2)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

**38** Jotham slept with his ancestors and was buried with his ancestors in the city of David, his ancestor. Then Ahaz, his son, became king in his place.

15:16 <sup>[1]</sup>, one ancient version and some modern versions read, .

## 2 Kings 16

### 2 Kings 16 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Ahaz

Ahaz was a wicked king. Israel and Aram united to fight against him, so he paid the Assyrian king to attack Aram. Assyria defeated the people of Aram and took them into captivity. The people were to trust in Yahweh and not rely on military alliances with other Gentile nations. This showed a lack of trust in the power of Yahweh. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

## 2 Kings 16:1

### In the seventeenth year of Pekah son of Remaliah

It can be stated clearly that this is the seventeenth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 17 of the reign of Pekah son of Remaliah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the seventeenth year of Pekah son of Remaliah, Ahaz son of Jotham king of Judah, began to reign.

### Pekah ... Remaliah

These are men's names. Pekah was the king of Israel. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:25](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Ahaz
- Jotham
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship

## 2 Kings 16:2

### what was right in the eyes of Yahweh his God

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what was right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh his God considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### as David his ancestor had done

David had done what is right.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Ahaz was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. He did not do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh his God, as David his ancestor had done.

## 2 Kings 16:3

### he walked in the way of the kings of Israel

Walking represents behavior and actions. Alternate translation: “King Ahaz acted the same way that the kings of Israel had acted” or “he did the things that the kings of Israel had done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### following the detestable practices of the nations

Here “following” represents doing what others do. Alternate translation: “copying the disgusting things that the other nations did, the nations” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the nations

The word “nations” represents the people of other nations. Here it refers to the people of the nations who had lived in that land. Alternate translation: “the people of other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### which Yahweh had driven out

“Drive out” means “force out.” Alternate translation: “which Yahweh had forced to leave”

### before the people of Israel

The people of those nations fled as the people of Israel moved into the land. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “before the people of Israel who moved into the land” or “as the people of Israel moved into the land” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [nation](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Instead, he walked in the way of the kings of Israel; indeed, he made his son pass through the fire, following the detestable practices of the nations, which Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel.

## 2 Kings 16:4

### **the high places, on the hilltops, and under every green tree**

These are places where the people of the other nations worshiped their false gods.

#### **ULT**

<sup>4</sup> He offered sacrifices and burned incense at the high places, on the hilltops, and under every green tree.

### **under every green tree**

God wanted his people to offer sacrifices to him in Jerusalem. The word "every" here is an exaggeration to show how determined King Ahaz was to disobey God by offering sacrifices in many other places instead. Alternate translation: "under many green trees" or "under many green trees around the country" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## 2 Kings 16:5

### Rezin ... Pekah ... Remaliah

These are men's names. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:37](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### besieged Ahaz

Ahaz was in Jerusalem. Here "Ahaz" represents himself and the people who were in Jerusalem with him. Alternate translation: "surrounded the city with Ahaz in it" or "surrounded Ahaz and the others in the city with him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then Rezin, king of Aram and Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel, came up to Jerusalem to attack. They besieged Ahaz, but they could not conquer him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#) (2)



## 2 Kings 16:6

### recovered Elath for Aram

Here “Aram” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “took back control of the city of Elath for the people of Aram” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Elath

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [2 Kings 14:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### drove the men of Judah out of Elath

“forced the men of Judah to leave Elath”

### to this day

This means to the time of the writing of this book.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jew, Jewish](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> At that time, Rezin king of Aram recovered Elath for Aram and drove the men of Judah out of Elath. Then the Arameans came to Elath where they have lived to this day.

## 2 Kings 16:7

### Tiglath-Pileser

In [2 Kings 15:19](#) this man was called “Pul.” See how you translated his name in [2 Kings 15:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### I am your servant and your son

Being a servant and a son represents submitting to someone’s authority. Alternate translation: “I will obey you as if I were your servant or your son” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### from the hand of the king of Aram and from the hand of the king of Israel

The hand is a metonym that represents power. Alternate translation: “from the power of the king of Aram and from the power of the king of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### who have attacked me

The kings attacking Ahaz represent the armies of those kings attacking Ahaz and his people. Alternate translation: “who have attacked me with their armies” or “whose armies have attacked me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship \(2\)](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria, saying, “I am your servant and your son. Come up and save me from the hand of the king of Aram and from the hand of the king of Israel, who have attacked me.”

## 2 Kings 16:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Ahaz
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household (2)
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- silver

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So Ahaz took the silver and gold that was found in the house of Yahweh and among the treasures of the king's palace and he sent it as a gift to the king of Assyria.

## 2 Kings 16:9

### the king of Assyria went up against Damascus

The word “king” represents the king and his army. Also, Damascus represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the king of Assyria and his army attacked the people of Damascus” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### carried off its people as prisoners to Kir

Carrying off the people represents forcing them to go away. Alternate translation: “made the people his prisoners and forced them to go to Kir” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Kir

This could mean: (1) this is the name of a city or (2) this word means “city” and refers to the capital city of Assyria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then the king of Assyria listened to him, and the king of Assyria went up against Damascus, conquered it and carried off its people as prisoners to Kir. He also killed Rezin the king of Aram.

## 2 Kings 16:10

### the design for all the workmanship needed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “all the instructions that the workers needed in order to build it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- priest, priesthood
- Ahaz
- Ahaz
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Uriah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

**10** King Ahaz went to Damascus to meet Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria. At Damascus he saw an altar. He sent to Uriah the priest a model of the altar and its pattern and the design for all the workmanship needed.

## 2 Kings 16:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- Ahaz
- Ahaz
- Uriah
- Uriah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

**11** So Uriah the priest built an altar to be just like the plans that King Ahaz had sent from Damascus. He finished it before King Ahaz arrived back from Damascus.

## 2 Kings 16:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> When the king came from Damascus he saw the altar; the king approached the altar and made offerings on it.

## 2 Kings 16:13

### General Information:

This is what King Ahaz did after he returned from Damascus and visited the new altar which Uriah the priest had built for him.

### He made his burnt offering

“King Ahaz made his burnt offering”

### on the altar

This refers to the altar that King Ahaz told Uriah to build.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- blood
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering

### ULT

**13** He made his burnt offering and his grain offering, poured out his drink offering, and sprinkled the blood of his fellowship offerings on the altar.



## 2 Kings 16:14

### from the front of the temple ... from between his altar and the temple of Yahweh

Both of these phrases tell where the bronze altar was. They refer to the same place.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- bronze
- face, facial
- house, household
- house, household

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> The bronze altar that was before Yahweh—he brought it from the front of the temple, from between his altar and the temple of Yahweh and put it on the north side of his altar.

## 2 Kings 16:15

### the large altar

This refers to the new altar that Ahaz told Uriah to build.

### the king's burnt offering and his grain offering

When Ahaz said "the king" and "his," he was referring to himself. The king treated his offerings as special. Alternate translation: "my burnt offering and my grain offering" or "the royal burnt offering and royal grain offering" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- blood
- blood
- command, commandment
- priest, priesthood
- Ahaz
- Uriah
- bronze
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- drink offering
- earth, land
- grain offering
- grain offering
- grain offering
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### ULT

**15** Then King Ahaz commanded Uriah the priest, saying, "On the large altar burn the morning burnt offering and the evening grain offering, and the king's burnt offering and his grain offering, with the burnt offering of all the people of the land, and their grain offering and their drink offerings. Sprinkle on it all the blood of the burnt offering, and all the blood of the sacrifice. But the bronze altar will be for me to consult for guidance."

## 2 Kings 16:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- priest, priesthood
- Ahaz
- Uriah
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Uriah the priest did just what King Ahaz commanded.

## 2 Kings 16:17

### the portable stands

“the movable stands” or “the carts.” These stands had wheels on them so they could be moved around.

### he also took down the sea

“he also removed the large bowl.” The “sea” was a huge basin or water bowl that was made of bronze.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaz
- bronze
- king, kingship

### ULT

**17** Then King Ahaz removed the panels and the basins from the portable stands; he also took down the sea from off the bronze oxen that were under it and put it on a stone pavement.

## 2 Kings 16:18

### because of the king of Assyria

Why they did this can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “to please the king of Assyria” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sabbath
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

**18** He removed the covered walkway for the Sabbath that they had built at the temple, along with the king’s entry outside the temple of Yahweh, because of the king of Assyria.

## 2 Kings 16:19

### are they not written ... Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Ahaz is in this other book. This can also be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” or “someone has written about them in The Book ... Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahaz](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**19** As for the other matters concerning Ahaz and what he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

## 2 Kings 16:20

### Ahaz slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: "Ahaz died as his ancestors had" or "like his ancestors, Ahaz died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### was buried with his ancestors

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people buried him with his ancestors" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Ahaz" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

#### ULT

**20** Ahaz slept with his ancestors and was buried with his ancestors in the city of David. Hezekiah his son became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 17

### 2 Kings 17 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story about the kingdom of Israel and continues with Judah alone.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Idol worship

Israel continued to worship idols, so God punished them by allowing Assyria to conquer them and take them away. Assyria brought people from other lands and settled them in what used to be Israel's territory and the new people worshiped their own gods in addition to Yahweh. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))



## 2 Kings 17:1

### Hoshea son of Elah

Hoshea became the king of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Elah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### He ruled in Samaria

Samaria was the capital city of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Hoshea](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the twelfth year of Ahaz king of Judah, the reign of Hoshea son of Elah began. He ruled in Samaria over Israel for nine years.

## 2 Kings 17:2

### evil in the sight of Yahweh

He did not obey Yahweh's laws as given to Moses. "In the sight of" is metaphor for judgment or opinion. Alternate translation: "evil to Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, yet not as the kings of Israel who were before him.

## 2 Kings 17:3

### Shalmaneser

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Hoshea became his servant and brought him tribute

Hoshea did as the King of Assyria commanded and brought money to him so that the King would not destroy Israel.

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Shalmaneser king of Assyria attacked him, and Hoshea became his servant and brought him tribute.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Hoshea
- grain offering
- king, kingship
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

## 2 Kings 17:4

### So

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### year by year

“every year”

### shut him up and bound him in prison

“put Hoshea in prison”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Hoshea
- grain offering
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- messenger

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then the king of Assyria realized that Hoshea had been plotting against him, for Hoshea had sent messengers to So king of Egypt; also, he offered no tribute to the king of Assyria, as he had done year by year. So the king of Assyria shut him up and bound him in prison.

## 2 Kings 17:5

### besieged it

put troops around the city in order to force it to surrender

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Samaria, Samaritan
- earth, land
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then the king of Assyria attacked throughout all the land, and attacked Samaria and besieged it for three years.

## 2 Kings 17:6

### carried Israel away to Assyria

The name "Israel" is metonymy for the people living there. Alternate translation: "took the Israelite people to Assyria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Halah ... Habor River ... Gozan

These are the names of locations. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Medes

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Hoshea](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> In the ninth year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria took Samaria and carried Israel away to Assyria. He put them in Halah, at the Habor River of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

## 2 Kings 17:7

### General Information:

The narrative pauses to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

### This captivity

This refers to the capture of the Israelites by the Assyrians.

### the hand of

"Hand" is metonymy for control, authority or power. Alternate translation: "the control of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> This captivity happened because the people of Israel had sinned against Yahweh their God, who had brought them up from the land of Egypt, from under the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt. The people had been worshiping other gods

## 2 Kings 17:8

### walking in the practices

“Walking” is metaphor for the ways or patterns of behavior people use in their lives. Alternate translation: “doing the activities” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> and walking in the practices of the nations whom Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel, and in the practices of the kings of Israel that they had done.



## 2 Kings 17:9

### General Information:

The narrative continues to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The people of Israel did secretly— against Yahweh their God—things that were not right. They built for themselves high places in all their cities, from the watchtower to the fortress.

## 2 Kings 17:10

### on every high hill and under every green tree

These are exaggerations to show that worship of false gods was widespread. Alternate translation: "on high hills and under green trees everywhere" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> They also set up stone pillars and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every green tree.

## 2 Kings 17:11

### General Information:

The narrative continues to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

### performed wicked things to provoke Yahweh to anger

Possible ways to render this: (1) "did many wicked things that caused Yahweh to become angry" or (2) "did many sinful things that made Yahweh angry"

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- exile, exiled

### ULT

**11** There they burned incense in all the high places, as the nations had done, those whom Yahweh had carried away before them. The Israelites performed wicked things to provoke Yahweh to anger;

## 2 Kings 17:12

### about which Yahweh had said to them

“about which Yahweh had warned them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> they worshiped idols, about which Yahweh had said to them, “You will not do this thing.”

## 2 Kings 17:13

### General Information:

The narrative continues to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

### Yahweh had testified ... by every prophet

Yahweh spoke through the prophets.

### Turn from your evil ways

"Stop doing the evil things you have been doing"

### I sent to you by my servants the prophets

The prophets were sent by Yahweh to remind the people of God's Laws and to obey them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelites
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- restore, restoration
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**13** Yet Yahweh had testified to Israel and to Judah by every prophet and every seer, saying, "Turn from your evil ways and keep my commandments and my statutes, and be careful to keep all the law I commanded your fathers, and that I sent to you by my servants the prophets."

## 2 Kings 17:14

### General Information:

The summary of Yahweh's judgment on Israel continues.

### they were very stubborn

They were unwilling to follow God's laws and rely on Yahweh as their God.

### ULT

**14** But they would not listen; instead they were very stubborn like their fathers who did not trust in Yahweh their God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy
- God
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

## 2 Kings 17:15

### rejected his statutes

They refused to obey God's Laws.

### They followed useless practices

They followed the practices of the people around them.

### not to imitate

"not to copy"

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- covenant
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- Yahweh
- cut off, cut down
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation
- statute

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> They rejected his statutes and the covenant that he had made with their ancestors, and the covenant decrees that he had given to them. They followed useless practices and they themselves became useless. They followed the pagan nations who were around them, those that Yahweh had commanded them not to imitate.

## 2 Kings 17:16

### General Information:

The summary of Yahweh's judgment on Israel continues.

### cast metal figures

Cast metal figures are objects made by pouring melted metal into a form (or mold) to make a shape.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**16** They ignored all the commandments of Yahweh their God. They made cast metal figures of two calves to worship. They made an Asherah pole, and they worshiped all the stars of the heavens and Baal.



## 2 Kings 17:17

### used ... enchantments

used magic to say what would happen in the future

### sold themselves to do that which was evil in the sight of Yahweh

To “sell themselves” is a metaphor for committing completely to do that which was evil. Alternate translation: “committed themselves to do things that Yahweh said were evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- son
- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### ULT

**17** They made their sons and daughters pass through the fire, they used divination and enchantments, they sold themselves to do that which was evil in the sight of Yahweh, and they provoked him to anger.

## 2 Kings 17:18

### removed them out of his sight

“Sight” is metonymy for being within the attention of Yahweh so he no longer cared for them. Alternate translation: “removed them from his attention” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- face, facial
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### ULT

**18** Therefore Yahweh was very angry with Israel and removed them out of his sight. There was no one left but the tribe of Judah alone.

## 2 Kings 17:19

### General Information:

The summary of Yahweh's judgment on Israel includes how Judah also fell into idolatry.

### Judah

The location "Judah" is metonymy for the people that live there. Alternate translation: "the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**19** Even Judah did not keep the commandments of Yahweh their God, and they followed the practices that Israel had done.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

## 2 Kings 17:20

### he afflicted them

“Yahweh punished the Israelites”

### gave them into the hand of those who would take the possession as spoil

“Hand” is metonymy for control, power or authority. Alternate translation: “handed them over to those who robbed them of their property” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### until he had cast them out of his sight

“his sight” is metaphor for attention and caring. Alternate translation: “until he got rid of them all” or “until they were no longer in his presence” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So Yahweh rejected all the descendants of Israel; he afflicted them and gave them into the hand of those who would take the possession as spoil, until he had cast them out of his sight.

## 2 Kings 17:21

### General Information:

The reason for Yahweh's judgment on Israel continues by relating the history behind it.

### He tore Israel

"He tore" here is a metaphor for violent removal. Alternate translation: "Yahweh removed the people of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### from the royal line of David

"from the rule of David's descendants"

### drove Israel away from following Yahweh

"turned the people of Israel away from following Yahweh"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

**21** He tore Israel from the royal line of David, and they made Jeroboam son of Nebat king. Jeroboam drove Israel away from following Yahweh and made them commit a great sin.

## 2 Kings 17:22

### they did not depart from them

“the Israelites did not stop committing these sins” or “they did not turn away from those sins”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Jeroboam

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The people of Israel followed all the sins of Jeroboam and they did not depart from them,

## 2 Kings 17:23

### so Yahweh removed Israel from his sight

“Sight” here is a metaphor for attention and care. Alternate translation: “so Yahweh removed the people of Israel from his attention and care” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- face, facial
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> so Yahweh removed Israel from his sight, as he had said through all his servants the prophets that he would. So Israel was carried away out of their own land to Assyria, and it is this way to this present day.

## 2 Kings 17:24

### General Information:

Yahweh's judgment continues against the new Assyrian inhabitants who practice their pagan religions.

### Kuthah ... Avva ... Hamath ... Sepharvaim

These are places in the Assyrian empire. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Samaria, Samaritan
- king, kingship

### ULT

**24** The king of Assyria brought people from Babylon and from Kuthah, and from Avva, and from Hamath and Sepharvaim, and placed them in the cities of Samaria in place of the people of Israel. They took over Samaria and lived in its cities.



## 2 Kings 17:25

### It happened at the beginning of their residence there that

“When those people first lived there”

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> It happened at the beginning of their residence there that they did not honor Yahweh. So Yahweh sent lions among them which killed some of them.

## 2 Kings 17:26

### The nations that you have carried away and placed in the cities of Samaria

“The people you have moved from other lands and sent to live in the cities of Samaria”

### do not know the practices required by the god of the land

“do not know how to worship the God that the Israelites worshiped in this land”

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> So they spoke to the king of Assyria, saying, “The nations that you have carried away and placed in the cities of Samaria do not know the practices required by the god of the land. So he has sent lions among them, and, see, the lions are killing people there because they do not know the practices required by the god of the land.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment (2)
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Samaria, Samaritan
- earth, land
- earth, land
- exile, exiled
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- nation

## 2 Kings 17:27

### Take one of the priests there whom you brought from there

“Take a priest who came from Samaria back there”

### let him teach them

“let the Samaritan priest teach the people who are living there now”

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Then the king of Assyria commanded, saying, “Take one of the priests there whom you brought from there, and let him go and live there, and let him teach them the practices required by the god of the land.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- God
- judge, judgment
- priest, priesthood
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- earth, land
- exile, exiled
- king, kingship
- walk, walked

## 2 Kings 17:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Bethel
- Bethel
- exile, exiled

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> So one of the priests whom they had carried away from Samaria came and lived in Bethel; he taught them how they should honor Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 17:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- temple, house, house of God
- nation
- nation
- nation (2)
- nation

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Every ethnic group made gods of their own, and put them in the high places that the Samaritans had made— every ethnic group in the cities where they lived.

## 2 Kings 17:30

### Succoth Benoth ... Nergal ... Ashima

These are the names of gods, both male and female. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kuthah ... Hamath

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon](#), [Babylonia](#), [Babylonian](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> The people of Babylon made Succoth Benoth; the people of Kuthah made Nergal; the people of Hamath made Ashima;

## 2 Kings 17:31

### Nibhaz ... Tartak

These are the names of gods, both male and female. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Avvites ... Sepharvites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### burned their children in the fire

“sacrificed their own children” or “burned their children in fire as an offering”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)

#### ULT

**31** the Avvites made Nibhaz and Tartak.  
The Sepharvites burned their children in the fire to Adrammelek and Anammelek, the gods of the Sepharvites.

## 2 Kings 17:32

### They

This refers to the pagan people that the king of Assyria moved into the cities of Samaria.

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- priest, priesthood
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> They also honored Yahweh, and appointed from among themselves priests of the high places, who sacrificed for them in the temples at the high places.



## 2 Kings 17:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- Yahweh
- exile, exiled
- nation
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> They honored Yahweh and also worshiped their own gods, in the customs of the nations from among whom they had been taken away.

## 2 Kings 17:34

### they persist in their old customs

“they continue in the same habits as before”

### They neither honor Yahweh

The people were only interested in appeasing Yahweh. They were either not interested or not aware Yahweh was interested in a relationship with them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- fear, afraid, frighten
- Israel, Israelites
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- name
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jacob, Israel
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> To this day they persist in their old customs. They neither honor Yahweh, nor do they follow the statutes, decrees, the law, or the commandments that Yahweh gave to the people of Jacob—whom he named Israel—

## 2 Kings 17:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- covenant
- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Yahweh
- cut off, cut down
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> and with whom Yahweh had made a covenant and commanded them, "You will not fear other gods, nor bow yourselves to them, nor worship them, nor sacrifice to them.

## 2 Kings 17:36

### General Information:

The summary comes toward the end with an appeal to worship only Yahweh.

### with great power and a raised arm

The phrase “raised arm” is metonymy for displaying power and means basically the same thing as “great power.” Alternate translation: “with very great power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- strength, strengthen, strong

### ULT

**36** But Yahweh, who brought you up from the land of Egypt with great power and a raised arm, is the one you must honor; it is to him that you will prostrate yourselves, and it is to him that you will sacrifice.

## 2 Kings 17:37

### keep them

“obey them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- statute
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> The statutes and the decrees, the law and the commandments that he wrote for you, you will keep them forever. So you must not fear other gods,

## 2 Kings 17:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- cut off, cut down

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> and the covenant that I have made with you, you will not forget; neither will you honor other gods.

## 2 Kings 17:39

### General Information:

The summary now ends with an appeal to worship only Yahweh and a description of the sins of the people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- Yahweh
- adversary, enemy
- hand

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But Yahweh your God is who you will honor. He will rescue you from the might of your enemies.”

## 2 Kings 17:40

### They would not listen

“Listen” here is a metaphor for paying attention and acting on the command. Alternate translation: “They did not obey” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

### ULT

**40** They would not listen, because they continued to do what they had done in the past.



## 2 Kings 17:41

### these nations feared Yahweh

These nations feared Yahweh only to the point of appeasing him the same way they treated their own gods.

### up to this day

“and have continued ever since.” The phrase “this day” refers to the time period in which the writer lived.

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**41** So these nations feared Yahweh and they also worshiped their carved figures, and their children did the same —as did their children’s children. They continue to do what their ancestors did, up to this day.

## 2 Kings 18

### 2 Kings 18 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of Hezekiah, one of the great kings of Judah (2 Kings 18 – 20). Because he was so important, there is more space dedicated to the history of his reign.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Trust in Yahweh

Hezekiah trusted and obeyed God. He stopped paying tribute to Assyria so the Assyrians invaded Judah. The Assyrian king told the people of Judah that resistance was useless. Despite this, Hezekiah trusted in the power of Yahweh. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

## 2 Kings 18:1

### General Information:

Hezekiah becomes king over Judah in place of his father King Ahaz.

### Hoshea ... Elah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Hoshea](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah, king of Israel, Hezekiah son of Ahaz, king of Judah began to reign.

## 2 Kings 18:2

### Zechariah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Abijah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- Zechariah (OT)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Abijah; she was the daughter of Zechariah.

## 2 Kings 18:3

### He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

“In the eyes” here is a metaphor for Yahweh’s attention and care.  
Alternate translation: “King Hezekiah did what was right to Yahweh”  
or “Hezekiah did things that Yahweh said are right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, following the example of all that David, his ancestor, had done.

## 2 Kings 18:4

### General Information:

The story of King Hezekiah's reign continues.

### He removed the high places, destroyed the stone pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles

"Hezekiah removed the high places of worship, smashed into pieces the memorial stones, and cut down the wooden poles of Asherah"

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He removed the high places, destroyed the stone pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles. He broke to pieces the bronze serpent that Moses had made, because in those days the people of Israel were burning incense to it; it was called "Nehushtan."

### Nehushtan

This name could be translated "Bronze Serpent Idol." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

## 2 Kings 18:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Hezekiah trusted in Yahweh, the God of Israel, so that after him there was no one like him among all the kings of Judah, nor among the kings who were before him.

## 2 Kings 18:6

### General Information:

The story of King Hezekiah's reign continues.

### he held on to Yahweh

To "hold on" is metaphor for staying loyal and attached. Alternate translation: "Hezekiah stayed loyal to Yahweh" or "Hezekiah remained faithful to Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For he held on to Yahweh. He did not stop following him but kept his commandments, which Yahweh commanded Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)



## 2 Kings 18:7

### wherever he went he prospered

“wherever Hezekiah went he was successful”

### Translation Words - ULT

- wise, wisdom
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So Yahweh was with Hezekiah, and wherever he went he prospered. He rebelled against the king of Assyria and did not serve him.

## 2 Kings 18:8

### fortified city

city with a wall all around it

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He attacked the Philistines to Gaza and the borders around, from the tower of the watchmen to the fortified city.

## 2 Kings 18:9

### Hoshea ... Elah ... Shalmaneser

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Hoshea](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> In the fourth year of King Hezekiah, which was the seventh year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, Shalmaneser king of Assyria came up against Samaria and besieged it.

## 2 Kings 18:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Hoshea
- Samaria, Samaritan
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> At the end of three years they took it, in the sixth year of Hezekiah, which was the ninth year of Hoshea king of Israel; in this way Samaria was captured.

## 2 Kings 18:11

### Halah ... Habor River ... Gozan

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Medes

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

**11** So the king of Assyria carried Israel away to Assyria and put them in Halah, and at the Habor River in Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

### So the king of Assyria carried Israel away to Assyria

“So the king of Assyria commanded his army to take the Israelites away from their homes, and he made them live in Assyria”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 18:12

### the voice of Yahweh

“Voice” is metonymy for the message about the command of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the command of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [voice](#)

### ULT

**12** He did this because they did not obey the voice of Yahweh their God, but they violated the terms of his covenant, all that Moses the servant of Yahweh commanded. They refused to listen to it or do it.

## 2 Kings 18:13

### Sennacherib

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### fortified cities

Cities with walls around them for protection. See how you translated “fortified city” in [2 Kings 18:8](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

**13** Then in the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah, Sennacherib king of Assyria attacked all the fortified cities of Judah and captured them.

## 2 Kings 18:14

### Lachish

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Withdraw from me

This expression assumes that “me” represents the kingdom of Hezekiah. Alternate translation: “Take your army out of my territory” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Whatever you put on me I will bear

“I will pay you whatever you demand of me”

### talents

This is the name of type of weight that was used for money. One talent weighted about 33 kilograms. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship \(2\)](#)
- [king, kingship \(3\)](#)
- [king, kingship \(4\)](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

**14** So Hezekiah king of Judah sent word to the king of Assyria, who was at Lachish, saying, “I have offended you. Withdraw from me. Whatever you put on me I will bear.” The king of Assyria required Hezekiah king of Judah to pay three hundred talents of silver and thirty talents of gold.



## 2 Kings 18:15

### treasuries

This was the place in the palace where money and valuable things were stored.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- silver

### ULT

**15** So Hezekiah gave him all the silver that was found in the house of Yahweh and in the treasuries of the king's palace.

## 2 Kings 18:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Judea, Judah
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

**16** Then Hezekiah cut off the gold from the doors of the temple of Yahweh and from the pillars that he had overlaid; he gave the gold to the king of Assyria.

## 2 Kings 18:17

### the king of Assyria mobilized his great army, sending Tartan and Rabsaris and the chief commander

Sennacherib sent a group of men from his army to Jerusalem to meet with King Hezekiah, including officials named Tartan and Rabsaris.

#### Tartan ... Rabsaris

Some Bibles translate these as proper names. Other versions of the Bible translate them as titles. Alternate translation: “the Tartan ... the Rabsaris” or “the leader of the soldier ... a court official” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Lachish

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the conduit of the upper pool

the channel where the water stored in the “upper pool” flows into the city of Jerusalem

### stood by it

“and waited there for King Hezekiah to meet with them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But the king of Assyria mobilized his great army, sending Tartan and Rabsaris and the chief commander from Lachish to King Hezekiah at Jerusalem. They traveled up the roads and arrived outside Jerusalem. They approached the conduit of the upper pool, on the highway of the launderers' field, and stood by it.

## 2 Kings 18:18

### Eliakim ... Hilkiyah ... Shebna ... Joah ... Asaph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Eliakim](#)
- [Hilkiyah](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

#### ULT

**18** When they had called to King Hezekiah, Eliakim son of Hilkiyah, who was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah son of Asaph, the recorder, went out to meet them.

## 2 Kings 18:19

### General Information:

Rabshakeh continues telling the message from the king of Assyria to King Hezekiah's men.

### What is the source of your confidence?

The King of Assyria (through his messenger Rabshakeh) wants to make King Hezekiah doubt himself and Egypt's support. He does not ask this question looking for an answer. Alternate translation: "You have no reason to think that you can defeat me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

**19** So the chief commander said to them to tell Hezekiah what the great king, the king of Assyria, said: "What is the source of your confidence?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

## 2 Kings 18:20

### In whom are you trusting, that you should rebel against me?

The King of Assyria (through his messenger Rabshakeh) wants to make King Hezekiah doubt himself and Egypt's support. He does not ask this question looking for an answer. Alternate translation: "You cannot trust anyone to help you rebel against me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> You speak only useless words, saying there are allies and strength for war. In whom are you trusting, that you should rebel against me?

## 2 Kings 18:21

### walking stick of this bruised reed of Egypt

The King of Assyria compares Egypt to a weak walking stick; you expect that it will support you when you lean on it, but instead it breaks and cuts you. Alternate translation: “the weak support from Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### but if a man leans ... and pierce it

The speaker is extending the metaphor by describing what happens when a reed is used as a support. Alternate translation: “but if someone uses this for support, he will be injured” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#) (2)
- [king, kingship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Look, you trust in the walking stick of this bruised reed of Egypt, but if a man leans on it, it will stick into his hand and pierce it. That is what Pharaoh king of Egypt is to anyone who trusts in him.

## 2 Kings 18:22

### General Information:

Rabshakeh continues telling the message from the king of Assyria to King Hezekiah's men.

### is not he the one whose high places ... Jerusalem'?

This question assumes the listeners know the answer and is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You need to remember that he is the one whose high places ... Jerusalem'!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

**22** But if you say to me, 'We are trusting in Yahweh our God,' is not he the one whose high places and altars Hezekiah has taken away, and has said to Judah and to Jerusalem, 'You must worship before this altar in Jerusalem'?

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- God
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- Judah



## 2 Kings 18:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Now therefore, I want to make you a good offer from my master the king of Assyria. I will give you two thousand horses, if you are able to find riders for them.

## 2 Kings 18:24

### General Information:

Rabshakeh continues telling the message from the king of Assyria to King Hezekiah's men.

### How could you resist even one captain of the least of my master's servants?

He asks this question to emphasize that the army of Hezekiah does not have the resources to fight. He also uses exaggeration to mock Hezekiah's army. Alternate translation: This could mean: (1) "You could not defeat even one of the least of the king's soldiers." or (2) "You could not defeat a group of the king's soldiers commanded by his least important officer." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

### ULT

**24** How could you resist even one captain of the least of my master's servants? You have put your trust in Egypt for chariots and horsemen!

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- Egypt, Egyptian
- face, facial
- govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

## 2 Kings 18:25

### Have I traveled up here without Yahweh to fight against this place and destroy it?

He asks this question to emphasize that Yahweh is behind his success to obey the command to destroy Israel. Alternate translation: "Yahweh himself told us to come here and destroy this land!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Have I traveled up here without Yahweh to fight against this place and destroy it? Yahweh said to me, 'Attack this land and destroy it.'

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- earth, land

## 2 Kings 18:26

### Eliakim ... Hilkiyah ... Shebna ... Joah

Translate the names of these men as in [2 Kings 18:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### in the ears of the people who are on the wall

“In the ears” is metonymy for being able to listen. Alternate translation: “because the people standing on the city wall will hear it and be afraid” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Hebrew](#)
- [son](#)
- [Eliakim](#)
- [Hilkiyah](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**26** Then Eliakim son of Hilkiyah, and Shebna, and Joah said to the chief commander, “Please speak to your servants in the Aramaic language, for we understand it. Do not speak with us in the language of Judah in the ears of the people who are on the wall.”

## 2 Kings 18:27

**Has my master sent me to your master and to you to speak these words? Has he not sent me to the men who sit on the wall, who will have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine with you?**

He asks these questions assuming the listeners know the answers to emphasize their intention to destroy and humiliate the leaders and people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "My master sent me not only to you and your master, but also to speak to the people in this city, who will suffer with you when they have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine to survive." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But the chief commander said to them, "Has my master sent me to your master and to you to speak these words? Has he not sent me to the men who sit on the wall, who will have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine with you?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir

## 2 Kings 18:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Hebrew
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- declare, proclaim, announce
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- voice

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then the chief commander stood and shouted in a loud voice in the Jews' language, saying, "Listen to the word of the great king, the king of Assyria."

## 2 Kings 18:29

### from my power

“my power” is metonymy for the ability of the king himself. Alternate translation: “from me” or “from the power of my army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [deceive, lie, deception, illusions](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**29** The king says, ‘Do not let Hezekiah deceive you, for he will not be able to rescue you from my power.’

## 2 Kings 18:30

### this city will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria

This can be expressed in an active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will never allow the king of Assyria's army to take this city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the hand

"Hand" is metonymy for control, authority and power. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Do not let Hezekiah make you trust in Yahweh, saying, "Yahweh will surely rescue us, and this city will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria."



## 2 Kings 18:31

### Make peace with me and come out to me

“Come out of the city and surrender to me” or “Make an agreement with me to surrender, and come out of the city to me”

### his own vine ... his own fig tree ... his own cistern

These sources of food and water are metaphors for security and plenty. This also was a common way of expressing this idea. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

**31** Do not listen to Hezekiah, for this is what the king of Assyria says: ‘Make peace with me and come out to me. Then every one of you will eat from his own vine and from his own fig tree, and drink from the water in his own cistern.’

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fig](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [vine](#)

## 2 Kings 18:32

### a land of grain and new wine ... bread and vineyards ... olive trees and honey

These are metaphors for having good things and plenty in daily life.  
(See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- bread
- earth, land
- earth, land
- earth, land
- earth, land (2)
- grain, grainfields
- honey, honeycomb
- oil
- olive
- vineyard

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> You will do this until I come and take you away to a land like your own land, a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of olive trees and honey, so that you may live and not die.' Do not listen to Hezekiah when he tries to persuade you, saying, 'Yahweh will rescue us.'

## 2 Kings 18:33

### General Information:

Rabshakeh continues telling the message from the king of Assyria to King Hezekiah's men.

### Has any of the gods ... Assyria?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "None the gods of the peoples have rescued them ... Assyria." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Has any of the gods of the peoples rescued them out of the hand of the king of Assyria?

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- earth, land
- hand
- king, kingship
- nation

## 2 Kings 18:34

### Where are the gods of ... Arpad?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "I have destroyed the gods of ... Arpad!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Hamath ... Arpad ... Sepharvaim ... Hena ... Ivvah ... Samaria

These are the names of places that represent the people living there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### out of my hand

"Hand" is metonymy for control, power, or authority. Alternate translation: "out from my control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Samaria, Samaritan
- hand

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Where are the gods of Hamath and Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah? Have they rescued Samaria out of my hand?

## 2 Kings 18:35

### is there any god who has rescued his land from my power?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "No god has rescued his land from my power." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Among all the gods of the lands, is there any god who has rescued his land from my power? How could Yahweh save Jerusalem from my might?"

### from my power

"My power" is metonymy for the person whose has the power. Alternate translation: "from me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### How could Yahweh save Jerusalem from my might?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "There is no way Yahweh can save Jerusalem from my might!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

## 2 Kings 18:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- king, kingship
- people, people group

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> But the people remained silent and did not respond, for the king had commanded, "Do not answer him."

## 2 Kings 18:37

### Eliakim ... Shebna ... Joah ... Asaph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### who was over the household

“who managed the king’s palace”

### the recorder

“the history keeper”

### chief commander

and is the translation of the Hebrew; some see this as a personal name, “Rabshakeh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Eliakim](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [house, household](#)

### ULT

**37** Then Eliakim son of Hilkiah, who was over the household; Shebna the scribe; and Joah son of Asaph, the recorder, came to Hezekiah with their clothes torn, and reported to him the words of the chief commander.

## 2 Kings 19

### 2 Kings 19 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The story of Hezekiah continues in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God's power

God is in control of everything. God caused the Assyrian king to fail in conquering Jerusalem because he mocked God.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Idiom

"The virgin daughter of Zion" here is an idiom meaning the people of Jerusalem. "The virgin daughter of Zion despises you and laughs you to scorn" means that "the people of Jerusalem know that Assyria will fail because they have mocked God." (See: [Idiom](#))



## 2 Kings 19:1

### house of Yahweh

This is another way of saying “temple of Yahweh.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- house, household
- king, kingship
- sackcloth

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about that when King Hezekiah heard their report, he tore his clothes, covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 19:2

### Eliakim ... Shebna ... Isaiah ... Amoz

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### He sent Eliakim

“Hezekiah sent Eliakim”

### all covered with sackcloth

“all wearing sackcloth”

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- scribe
- son
- Amoz
- Eliakim
- Isaiah
- elder, older, old
- house, household
- sackcloth

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He sent Eliakim, who was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, all covered with sackcloth, to Isaiah son of Amoz, the prophet.

## 2 Kings 19:3

### This day is a day of distress

“This is a time of distress”

**the children have come to the time of birth,  
but there is no strength for them to be born**

This is a metaphor to describe how the people and their leaders have become so weak and unable to fight the enemy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They said to him, “Hezekiah says, ‘This day is a day of distress, rebuke, and disgrace, for the children have come to the time of birth, but there is no strength for them to be born.’”

## 2 Kings 19:4

### all the words of the chief commander

“everything that the chief commander has said”

### lift up your prayer

This a common way (an idiom) to use the action of lifting to metaphorically represent praying earnestly to Yahweh who is above us. Alternate translation: “pray earnestly” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> It may be that Yahweh your God will hear all the words of the chief commander, whom the king of Assyria his master has sent to defy the living God, and will rebuke the words which Yahweh your God has heard. Now lift up your prayer for the remnant that is still here.”

## 2 Kings 19:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Isaiah
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So the servants of King Hezekiah came to Isaiah,

## 2 Kings 19:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Isaiah
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> and Isaiah said to them, “Say to your master: ‘Yahweh says, “Do not be afraid of the words that you have heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have insulted me.”

## 2 Kings 19:7

### I will put a spirit in him, and he will hear a certain report and go back to his own land

“I will control the attitude of the king of Assyria, so when he hears a report, he will want to return to his own country”

### I will put a spirit in him

“I will influence his thinking” or “I will cause him to think differently.” Here “spirit” probably refers to his attitude and thoughts, rather than to a spirit being.

### I will cause him to fall by the sword

“Fall by the sword” is metonymy for being killed. Alternate translation: “I will cause him to die by the sword” or “I will cause some men to kill him with a sword” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Look, I will put a spirit in him, and he will hear a certain report and go back to his own land. I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.””

## 2 Kings 19:8

### the chief commander

“the official from Assyria in charge under the king”

### found the king of Assyria fighting

“discovered that the Assyrian army was fighting”

### Libnah ... Lachish

The names of cities in the kingdom of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingship
- return, turn back

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then the chief commander returned and found the king of Assyria fighting against Libnah, for he had heard that the king had gone away from Lachish.



## 2 Kings 19:9

### Sennacherib ... Tirhakah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### had mobilized to fight against him

“had prepared his army to fight against Assyria”

### so he sent

“so Sennacherib sent”

### a message

This message was written in a letter.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then Sennacherib heard that Tirhakah king of Cush and Egypt had mobilized to fight against him, so he sent messengers again to Hezekiah with a message:

## 2 Kings 19:10

### General Information:

This is the message that King Sennacherib of Assyria sent to King Hezekiah.

### Do not let your God in whom you trust deceive you, saying

“Do not believe your God in whom you trust. He is lying when he says”

### the hand of the king of Assyria

“Hand” is metonymy for control, authority or power. Alternate translation: “the control of the government of Assyria” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- deceive, lie, deception, illusions
- hand
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

10 “Say to Hezekiah king of Judah, ‘Do not let your God in whom you trust deceive you, saying, “Jerusalem will not be given over into the hand of the king of Assyria.”’

## 2 Kings 19:11

### See, you have heard

“Notice, you have heard” or “You have certainly heard.” Here “see” was used to draw attention to what he was about to say next.

### So will you be rescued?

Sennacherib used this question to emphasize that God will not be able to rescue them. Alternate translation: “Your God will not rescue you!” or “You will not be able to escape either!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

**11** See, you have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands by destroying them completely. So will you be rescued?

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- earth, land
- king, kingship

## 2 Kings 19:12

### General Information:

King Sennacharib's message to King Hezekiah continues.

**Have the gods of the nations rescued them, the nations ... destroyed: Gozan ... Assar?**

This question assumes Hezekiah knows the answer and provides emphasis. Alternate translation: "The gods of the nations, the nations ... destroyed—Gozan ... Assar—certainly did not rescue them!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### my fathers

"the previous kings of Assyria" or "the armies of the previous kings of Assyria"

### Gozan ... Haran ... Rezepth ... Eden ... Tel Assar

These are all place names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [nation](#)

### ULT

**12** Have the gods of the nations rescued them, the nations that my fathers destroyed: Gozan, Haran, Rezepth, and the people of Eden in Tel Assar?

## 2 Kings 19:13

### Hamath ... Arpad ... Sepharvaim ... Hena ... Ivvah

These are all place names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Where are the king of Hamath, the king of Arpad, the king of the cities of Sepharvaim, of Hena, and Ivvah?"

## 2 Kings 19:14

### this letter

This refers to the letter that King Sennacherib of Assyria sent to Hezekiah ([2 Kings 19:8](#)).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- declare, proclaim, announce
- hand
- house, household

### ULT

**14** Hezekiah received this letter from the messengers and read it. Then he went up to the house of Yahweh and spread it before him.

## 2 Kings 19:15

### you who sit above the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "you who sit on your throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**15** Then Hezekiah prayed before Yahweh and said, "Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, you who sit above the cherubim, you are God alone over all the kingdoms of the earth. You made the heavens and the earth.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- cherub
- earth, land
- earth, land
- kingdom

## 2 Kings 19:16

### General Information:

King Hezekiah continues praying to Yahweh after receiving the letter from King Sennacherib of Assyria.

### Turn your ear, Yahweh, and listen. Open your eyes, Yahweh, and see

Both of these sentences urge Yahweh to pay attention to the things that Sennacherib is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Turn your ear, Yahweh, and listen

The words “Turn your ear” and “listen” mean the same thing and add emphasis to the plea. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, please listen to what he is saying” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Open your eyes, Yahweh, and see

The words “Open your eyes” and “see” mean the same thing and add emphasis to the plea. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, please pay attention to what is happening” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**16** Turn your ear, Yahweh, and listen.  
Open your eyes, Yahweh, and see, and hear the words of Sennacherib, which he has sent to mock the living God.



## 2 Kings 19:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- true, truth
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- earth, land
- king, kingship
- nation

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Truly, Yahweh, the kings of Assyria have destroyed the nations and their lands.

## 2 Kings 19:18

### They have put their gods into the fire

“The Assyrian kings have burned up the gods of the other nations”

### Assyrians have destroyed them

“Assyrians have destroyed both the nations and the nations’ gods”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Adam
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- hand

### ULT

**18** They have put their gods into the fire, for they were not gods but the work of men’s hands, just wood and stone. So the Assyrians have destroyed them.

## 2 Kings 19:19

### General Information:

King Hezekiah continues praying to Yahweh after receiving the letter from King Sennacherib of Assyria.

### I implore you

“I beg of you”

### from his power

“from the power of the King of Assyria” or “from the armies of the King of Assyria”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- earth, land
- hand
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**19** Now then, Yahweh our God, save us, I implore you, from his power, so that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that you, Yahweh, are God alone.”

## 2 Kings 19:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Amoz
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Isaiah
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then Isaiah son of Amoz sent a message to Hezekiah, saying, “Yahweh, the God of Israel says, ‘Because you have prayed to me concerning Sennacherib king of Assyria, I have heard you.

## 2 Kings 19:21

### The virgin daughter of Zion

“Virgin daughter” here is a metaphor for the people of Jerusalem as if they are young, vibrant and beautiful. The term “daughter” was used to give personal characteristics to cities by some biblical writers. Alternate translation: “The beautiful people of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

### ULT

**21** This is the word that Yahweh has spoken about him: “The virgin daughter of Zion despises you and laughs you to scorn. The daughter of Jerusalem shakes her head at you.”

### The virgin daughter of Zion despises you and laughs you to scorn. The daughter of Jerusalem shakes her head at you.

Both of these sentences intend to give the same meaning. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### The daughter of Jerusalem

“Daughter” is metaphor for the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “The people of the city of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### shakes her head at you

This action is a metaphor to represent disdain at the pride of the Assyrians. Alternate translation: “scorns you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [head](#)
- [virgin, virginity](#)

## 2 Kings 19:22

**Whom have you defied and insulted? Against whom have you exalted your voice and lifted up your eyes in pride? Against the Holy One of Israel!**

Yahweh uses rhetorical questions to rebuke Sennacherib. Alternate translation: "You have defied and insulted me! You have exalted your voice and lifted up your eyes in pride against me, the Holy One of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Whom have you defied and insulted?  
Against whom have you exalted your  
voice and lifted up your eyes in pride?  
Against the Holy One of Israel!

### lifted up your eyes in pride

"lifted up your eyes in pride" is metonymy for a haughty or arrogant facial expression. Alternate translation: "looked at very proudly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the Holy One of Israel

An expression for the God of Israel, Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)

## 2 Kings 19:23

### General Information:

This continues the message from Yahweh given by Isaiah, the prophet, to King Hezekiah concerning King Sennacherib. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### you have defied the Lord

To “defy” is to openly resist or mock.

### I have gone up ... I will cut down ... I will enter

These boasts made by Sennacherib could only be fulfilled by his army. The pronoun “I” represents him and his army. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Lebanon
- cedar, cedarwood
- cut off, cut down
- hand
- messenger
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### ULT

**23** By your messengers you have defied the Lord, and have said, ‘With the multitude of my chariots I have gone up to the heights of the mountains, to the highest elevations of Lebanon. I will cut down the tall cedars and the choice cypress trees there. I will enter into its farthest parts, its most fruitful forest.

## 2 Kings 19:24

### **I dried up all the rivers of Egypt under the soles of my feet.**

This is a boast that Sennacherib has so many soldiers that their feet dry up the water when they cross a river. This is an exaggeration to emphasize the great number of soldiers he has. Alternate translation: "And by marching through the streams of Egypt, we dried them all up!" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### **ULT**

<sup>24</sup> I have dug wells and have drunk foreign waters. I dried up all the rivers of Egypt under the soles of my feet.'



## 2 Kings 19:25

### General Information:

This continues the message from Yahweh, given by Isaiah, the prophet, for King Hezekiah concerning King Sennacherib. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Have you not heard how ... times?

To make the point strongly this question assumes the listener knows the answer. Alternate translation: "Surely you know how ... times." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### impregnable cities

"cities that cannot be captured" or "cities surrounded by high walls"

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Have you not heard how I determined it long ago, and worked it out in ancient times? Now I am bringing it to pass. You are here to reduce impregnable cities into heaps of ruins.

## 2 Kings 19:26

### plants in the field, green grass

This metaphor compares the weak victims of the Assyrian advance to fragile plants. Alternate translation: “as frail as plants and grass in the fields” or “as weak as shallow rooted plants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the grass on the roof or in the field, burned before it has grown up

This continues the metaphor comparing the weak victims of the Assyrian advance to fragile plants in difficult conditions for growing fully. Alternate translation: “like grass before it has matured” or “like grass before it has grown tall” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [courage](#), [courageous](#), [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [discourage](#), [discouragement](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**26** Their inhabitants, of little strength, are shattered and ashamed. They are plants in the field, green grass, the grass on the roof or in the field, burned before it has grown up.

## 2 Kings 19:27

### General Information:

This continues the message from Yahweh, given by Isaiah, the prophet, for King Hezekiah concerning King Sennecherib. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### raging against me

“angry shouting about me”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)
- [tremble](#), [stagger](#), [shake](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But I know your sitting down, your going out, your coming in, and your raging against me.

## 2 Kings 19:28

### because your arrogance has reached my ears

“Ears” are metonymy for listening or hearing. Alternate translation: “because I have heard your proud words” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will put my hook in your nose, and my bit in your mouth

A “hook” and a “bit” (to control a horse) are metaphors for Yahweh’s control of Sennacherib. Alternate translation: “I will lead you like an animal” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will turn you back the way you came

That Sennacherib will return home before he can conquer Jerusalem can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “I will make you return to your own country the same way you came, without conquering Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [tremble, stagger, shake](#)

#### ULT

**28** Because of your raging against me, and because your arrogance has reached my ears, I will put my hook in your nose, and my bit in your mouth; I will turn you back the way you came.”

## 2 Kings 19:29

### General Information:

Here Isaiah is talking to King Hezekiah. He continues using parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### grows wild

“grows without having been planted”

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- devour
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- vineyard

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> This will be the sign for you: This year you will eat what grows wild, and in the second year what grows from that. But in the third year you must plant and harvest, plant vineyards and eat their fruit.

## 2 Kings 19:30

### The remnant of the house of Judah that survives will again take root and bear fruit

This metaphor compares restoration of the remnant to plantings that take hold and produce results. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah who remain alive will restore their lives and prosperity” or “The people who remain in Judah will prosper and have many children” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> The remnant of the house of Judah that survives will again take root and bear fruit.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)
- [house, household](#)

## 2 Kings 19:31

### The zeal of Yahweh of hosts will do this

“The strong action of Yahweh will make this happen”

### Translation Words - ULT

- remnant
- Yahweh
- Zion, Mount Zion
- Jerusalem
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> For from Jerusalem a remnant will come out, from Mount Zion survivors will come. The zeal of Yahweh of hosts will do this.

## 2 Kings 19:32

### General Information:

This is the end of the message from Yahweh, spoken through the prophet Isaiah to King Hezekiah. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### nor shoot an arrow here

“Arrow” is metonymy representing all tools of warfare and destruction. Alternate translation: “nor do any fighting here” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### or build up a siege ramp against it

“and they will not even build up high mounds of earth against the city wall to enable them to attack the city”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Therefore Yahweh says this about the king of Assyria: “He will not come into this city nor shoot an arrow here. Neither will he come before it with shield or build up a siege ramp against it.”



## 2 Kings 19:33

### this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> The way by which he came will be the same way he will leave; he will not enter this city— this is Yahweh's declaration."

## 2 Kings 19:34

### for my own sake and for my servant David's sake

“for the sake of my own reputation and because of what I promised to King David, who served me well”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> For I will defend this city and rescue it, for my own sake and for my servant David's sake.”

## 2 Kings 19:35

### It came about

“It happened”

### 185,000 soldiers

“one hundred eighty-five thousand soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

### When the men arose

“When the men who were left alive got up”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [messenger](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> It came about that night that the angel of Yahweh went out and attacked the camp of the Assyrians, putting to death 185,000 soldiers. When the men arose early in the morning, dead bodies lay everywhere.

## 2 Kings 19:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingship
- return, turn back

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> So Sennacherib king of Assyria left Israel and went home and stayed in Nineveh.

## 2 Kings 19:37

### Adrammelek ... Sharezer ... Esarhaddon

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- save, saved, safe, salvation
- son
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Ararat
- earth, land
- house, household
- reign, rule
- sword, swordsmen

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Later, as he was worshiping in the house of Nisrok his god, his sons Adrammelek and Sharezer killed him with the sword. Then they escaped into the land of Ararat. Then Esarhaddon his son became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 20

### 2 Kings 20 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter finishes the story of Hezekiah.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Hezekiah's additional time

God hears the distressed call of his faithful believers. Hezekiah was dying but when he prayed, God gave him 15 more years of life. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

## 2 Kings 20:1

### Set your house in order

“House” is metonymy for what was under Hezekiah’s control.  
Alternate translation: “Give final instructions to your household and government” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- life, live, living, alive
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Yahweh
- Amoz
- Isaiah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- house, household

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In those days Hezekiah was sick to the point of dying. So Isaiah son of Amoz, the prophet came to him, and said to him, “Yahweh says, ‘Set your house in order; for you will die, and not live.’”

## 2 Kings 20:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- face, facial

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then Hezekiah turned his face to the wall and prayed to Yahweh, saying,



## 2 Kings 20:3

### call to mind

This is a common way of speaking, an idiom, urging Yahweh to remember. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

### walked

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “lived my life” (See: [Idiom](#))

### good in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “in your judgment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Yahweh
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> “Please, Yahweh, call to mind how I have faithfully walked before you with my whole heart, and how I have done what was good in your sight.” Then Hezekiah wept loudly.

## 2 Kings 20:4

### the word of Yahweh came

“Word” represents the message Yahweh revealed to Isaiah. This is a common way of speaking, an idiom. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his word” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [court, courtyard](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Before Isaiah had gone out into the middle courtyard, the word of Yahweh came to him, saying,

## 2 Kings 20:5

### I have heard your prayer, and I have seen your tears

The second part reinforces the first part to make one message by using parallelism. Alternate translation: "I have heard your prayers and seen your tears" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### on the third day

"two days from now" The day Isaiah said this was the first day, so "the third day" would be the same as "two days from now."

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- pray, prayer
- restore, restoration
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- people, people group

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> "Turn back, and say to Hezekiah, the leader of my people, 'This is what Yahweh, the God of David your ancestor, says: "I have heard your prayer, and I have seen your tears. I am about to heal you on the third day, and you will go up to the house of Yahweh."

## 2 Kings 20:6

### General Information:

The message from Yahweh to King Hezekiah through the prophet Isaiah continues.

### fifteen years

15 years (See: [Numbers](#))

### from the hand of the king of Assyria

“Hand” is metonymy for power, authority and control. Alternate translation: “from the control of the king of Assyria” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

6 I will add fifteen years to your life, and I will rescue you and this city from the hand of the king of Assyria, and I will defend this city for my own sake and for my servant David's sake.””

## 2 Kings 20:7

### lump of figs

“paste made of boiled figs”

### They did so and put it on his boil

“Hezekiah’s servants did this and put the paste on Hezekiah’s sore”

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- life, live, living, alive
- Isaiah
- fig

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So Isaiah said, “Take a lump of figs.” They did so and put it on his boil, and he recovered.

## 2 Kings 20:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sign, proof, reminder
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Isaiah
- house, household

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Hezekiah said to Isaiah, “What will be the sign that Yahweh will heal me, and that I should go up to the temple of Yahweh on the third day?”

## 2 Kings 20:9

### Shall the shadow go forward ten steps, or go back ten steps?

The source of “the shadow” can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Do you want Yahweh to make the shadow caused by the sunlight on the stairway to go forward ten steps or to go back ten steps?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ten steps

This expression refers to the “stairway of Ahaz” in [2 Kings 20:11](#). This was probably a special stairway built for King Ahaz in such a way that its steps marked the hours of daylight as the sun’s rays advanced along them. In this way, the staircase served to tell the time during the day.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Isaiah replied, “This will be the sign for you from Yahweh, that Yahweh will do the thing that he has spoken. Shall the shadow go forward ten steps, or go back ten steps?”

## 2 Kings 20:10

### It is an easy thing for the shadow to go forward ten steps

Why “it is an easy thing” can be stated clearly. “It is easy to cause the shadow to move forward ten steps, because that is the normal thing for it to do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Hezekiah answered, “It is an easy thing for the shadow to go forward ten steps. No, let the shadow go backward ten steps.”



## 2 Kings 20:11

### the stairway of Ahaz

This was probably a special stairway built for King Ahaz in such a way that its steps marked the hours of daylight as the sun's rays advanced along them. In this way, the staircase served to tell the time during the day. Alternate translation: "the steps that had been built for King Ahaz" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**11** So Isaiah the prophet cried out to Yahweh, and he brought the shadow ten steps backward, from where it had moved on the stairway of Ahaz.

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Ahaz
- Isaiah
- declare, proclaim, announce
- return, turn back

## 2 Kings 20:12

### Marduk-Baladan ... Baladan

These are the names of the king of Babylon and his son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- grain offering
- king, kingship

### ULT

**12** At that time Marduk-Baladan son of Baladan king of Babylon sent letters and a gift to Hezekiah, for he had heard that Hezekiah had been sick.

## 2 Kings 20:13

### listened to those letters

“carefully considered those letters” or “heard the message from the king of Babylon”

### There was nothing in his house, nor in all his kingdom, that Hezekiah did not show them

Here “There was nothing ... did not show them” is an exaggeration used for emphasis. It means Hezekiah showed them all of his most valuable things. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Hezekiah showed him absolutely everything valuable in his house and in all his kingdom” (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- temple, house, house of God
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household (2)
- olive
- silver

### ULT

**13** Hezekiah listened to those letters, and then showed the messengers all the palace and his valuable things, the silver, the gold, the spices and precious oil, and the storehouse of his weapons, and all that was found in his storehouses. There was nothing in his house, nor in all his kingdom, that Hezekiah did not show them.

## 2 Kings 20:14

### these men

This refers to the men sent to King Hezekiah with a message and gifts from Marduk-Baladan.

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Isaiah
- king, kingship

### ULT

**14** Then Isaiah the prophet came to King Hezekiah and asked him, "What did these men say to you? Where did they come from?" Hezekiah said, "They came from the distant country of Babylon."

## 2 Kings 20:15

**They have seen everything in my house. There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them**

Hezekiah repeats the same idea in two ways to emphasize his point. (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Parallelism](#))

**There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them**

“Nothing” and “not” cancel each other out to make the idea positive. This exaggeration is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “I showed them absolutely every one of my valuable things” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- temple, house, house of God

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Isaiah asked, “What have they seen in your house?” Hezekiah answered, “They have seen everything in my house. There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them.”

## 2 Kings 20:16

### So Isaiah said to Hezekiah

Why Isaiah spoke can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "So, because Isaiah knew Hezekiah had been foolish to show the men all his valuable things, Isaiah said to him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the word of Yahweh

"the message of Yahweh"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Isaiah](#)

#### ULT

**16** So Isaiah said to Hezekiah, "Listen to the word of Yahweh:

## 2 Kings 20:17

### Look, the days are about to come when

“Listen to me, someday there will come a time when”; “Look” is used to draw attention to what Isaiah is about to tell Hezekiah.

### the days

“Days” is synecdoche to refer to an undefined span of time. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### ULT

17 ‘Look, the days are about to come when everything in your palace, the things that your ancestors stored away until this present day, will be carried to Babylon. Nothing will be left, says Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 20:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**18** The sons born from you, whom you yourself have fathered—they will take them away, and they will become eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.’”



## 2 Kings 20:19

### For he thought

“Because Hezekiah thought”

### Will there not be peace and stability in my days?

Hezekiah asks this question for emphasis knowing the answer already. Alternate translation: “I can be sure that there will be peace and stability in my days.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Then Hezekiah said to Isaiah, “The word of Yahweh that you have spoken is good.” For he thought, “Will there not be peace and stability in my days?”

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- true, truth
- Yahweh
- Isaiah
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

## 2 Kings 20:20

### pool

A small area of still water for storage

### conduit

A tunnel for carrying the water

### are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> As for the other matters concerning Hezekiah, and all his power, and how he constructed the pool and the conduit, and how he brought water into the city—are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

## 2 Kings 20:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Hezekiah slept with his ancestors, and Manasseh his son became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 21

### 2 Kings 21 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God's judgment

God judges sin. When Manasseh worshiped idols and did many evil things, God said he would cause Judah to be destroyed by its enemies. (See: [judge, judgment](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#) and [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Simile

"I will wipe Jerusalem clean, as a man wipes a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down" means "God would completely destroy Jerusalem." (See: [Simile](#))

## 2 Kings 21:1

### Hephzibah

The mother of King Manasseh (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign; he reigned fifty-five years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hephzibah.

## 2 Kings 21:2

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### like the disgusting things

Another possible meaning is "including the disgusting things."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, like the disgusting things of the nations whom Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel.

## 2 Kings 21:3

### he rebuilt the high places ... he built altars for Baal, made an Asherah pole

Manasseh would have commanded his workers to do the building for him. Alternate translation: “he had the high places rebuilt ... he had altars built for Baal, had an Asherah pole made” or “he had his workers rebuild the high places ... he had them build altars for Baal, make an Asherah pole” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Israel, Israelites
- perish
- prostrate, bow down, worship
- Ahab
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship
- return, turn back

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For he rebuilt the high places that Hezekiah his father had destroyed, and he built altars for Baal, made an Asherah pole, as Ahab king of Israel had done, and he bowed down to all the stars of heaven and worshiped them.

## 2 Kings 21:4

### General Information:

The story of King Manasseh's reign continues.

### It is in Jerusalem that my name will be forever

The name is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation:  
"Jerusalem is where I will forever make known who I am" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Manasseh built altars in the house of Yahweh, although Yahweh had commanded, "It is in Jerusalem that my name will be forever."

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- name
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem



## 2 Kings 21:5

### He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh

It is implied that he built these altars so people could make sacrifices and worship the stars. Also, he would not have built these altars himself, rather he would have commanded his workers to do it.

Alternate translation: "He had his workers build altars in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh so that the people could worship the stars and offer them sacrifices" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- court, courtyard
- house, household

## 2 Kings 21:6

### He caused his son to pass through the fire

You may need to make explicit why he caused his son be put into the fire and what happened after he did so. Alternate translation: “He burned his son to death as an offering to his gods” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### consulted with

“asked for information from”

### much evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “many things that were evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “many things that Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### ULT

6 He caused his son to pass through the fire, he performed sorcery and divination and consulted with those who talked with the dead and with those who talked with spirits. He did much evil in the sight of Yahweh, provoking him to anger.

## 2 Kings 21:7

### General Information:

The story of King Manasseh's reign continues.

### that he had made

Manasseh probably did not do the work. His servants would have done the work. Alternate translation: "that Manasseh had ordered his servants to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### that I will put my name forever

Here Yahweh putting his "name" on the temple represents him designating it as the place to worship him. Alternate translation: "where I want people to worship me forever" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [son](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The carved figure of Asherah that he had made, he placed it in the house of Yahweh. It was about this house that Yahweh had spoken to David and Solomon his son; he had said: "It is in this house and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen from all the tribes of Israel, that I will put my name forever."

## 2 Kings 21:8

### the feet of Israel

The feet are a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” or “the Israelites” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)
- [watch](#), [guard](#), [keep](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I will not cause the feet of Israel to wander any more out of the land that I gave to their ancestors, if they will only be careful to obey all that I have commanded them, and to follow all the law that my servant Moses commanded them.”

## 2 Kings 21:9

### even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel

Here “nations” refers to the people who had lived in the land of Canaan before the Israelites had arrived. Alternate translation: “even more than the people whom Yahweh had destroyed as the people of Israel advanced through the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But the people did not listen, and Manasseh led them to do evil even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)

## 2 Kings 21:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So Yahweh spoke by his servants the prophets, saying,

## 2 Kings 21:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- abomination, abominable
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Amorite
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah
- afflict, affliction, distress
- king, kingship

### ULT

**11** “Because Manasseh king of Judah has done these disgusting things, and has acted wickedly more than all that the Amorites who were before him did, and has also made Judah sin with his idols,

## 2 Kings 21:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- Judah

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> therefore Yahweh, the God of Israel, says this: Look, I am about to bring such evil on Jerusalem and Judah that whoever hears of it, both his ears will tingle.



## 2 Kings 21:13

### stretch over Jerusalem the measuring line used against Samaria, and the plumb line used against the house of Ahab

The words “measuring line” and “plumb line” are metaphors for the standards Yahweh uses to judge people. Alternate translation: “judge Jerusalem using the same measure I used when I judged Samaria and the house of Ahab” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> I will stretch over Jerusalem the measuring line used against Samaria, and the plumb line used against the house of Ahab; I will wipe Jerusalem clean, as a man wipes a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down.

### against Samaria

Samaria is the capital city and it represents all the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “against the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### plumb line

a tool made of a heavy weight and a thin rope used to show if a wall is straight

### the house of Ahab

Here “house” represents family. Alternate translation: “the family of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [blot out, wipe out](#)
- [blot out, wipe out](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [house, household](#)

## 2 Kings 21:14

### I will throw off

“I will abandon” or “I will reject”

### give them into the hand of their enemies

Here the “hand” of the enemies refers to their enemies’ control.  
Alternate translation: “let their enemies defeat them and take over their land” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- remnant
- adversary, enemy
- adversary, enemy
- hand

### ULT

**14** I will throw off the remnant of my inheritance and give them into the hand of their enemies. They will become victims and plunder for all their enemies,

## 2 Kings 21:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> because they have done what is evil in my sight, and have provoked me to anger, since the day their ancestors came out of Egypt, to this day.”

## 2 Kings 21:16

### Moreover, Manasseh

“Also, Manasseh” or “In addition, Manasseh”

### Manasseh shed much innocent blood

The words “shed much innocent blood” are a metonym for killing people violently. It might be best to translate this so the reader understands that other people helped Manasseh do this. Alternate translation: “Manasseh ordered his soldiers to kill many innocent people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another with death

This hyperbole emphasizes the great number of people Manasseh had killed throughout Jerusalem. The abstract noun “death” can be stated as “dead people.” Alternate translation: “there were very many dead people throughout Jerusalem” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- innocent
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah

### ULT

**16** Moreover, Manasseh shed much innocent blood, until he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another with death. This was in addition to the sin by which he made Judah to sin, when they did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 21:17

### are they not written ... Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written ... Judah.” or “you can find them ... Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship

### ULT

**17** As for the other matters concerning Manasseh, all that he did, and the sin that he committed, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

## 2 Kings 21:18

### slept with his ancestors and

This is a polite way of saying he “died, as his ancestors had, and” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### the garden of Uzza

This could mean: (1) “the garden that had once belonged to a man named Uzza” or (2) “Uzza Garden.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Amon

This is a man’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- reign, rule

#### ULT

**18** Manasseh slept with his ancestors and was buried in the garden of his own house, in the garden of Uzza. Amon his son became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 21:19

### Amon ... Haruz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Meshullemeth

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jotbah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Amon was twenty-two years old when he began to reign; he reigned two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Meshullemeth; she was the daughter of Haruz of Jotbah.

## 2 Kings 21:20

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**20** He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as Manasseh his father had done.

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather



## 2 Kings 21:21

### followed in all the way that his father had walked in

“walked in all the ways that his father walked in.” The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “lived completely the way his father had lived” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, bow down, worship
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Amon followed in all the way that his father had walked in and worshiped the idols that his father worshiped, and bowed down to them.

## 2 Kings 21:22

### He abandoned Yahweh

“He went away from Yahweh” or “He paid no more attention to Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> He abandoned Yahweh, the God of his fathers, and did not walk in the way of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 21:23

### conspired against him

“made plans and worked together to harm him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- die, dead, deadly, death
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The servants of Amon conspired against him and put the king to death in his own house.

## 2 Kings 21:24

### the people of the land

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “some of the people in Judah” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### conspired against

“made plans and worked together to harm.” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 21:23](#).

### ULT

**24** But the people of the land killed all those who had conspired against King Amon, and they made Josiah his son king in his place.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Josiah
- earth, land
- earth, land
- king, kingship
- people, people group
- people, people group (2)
- reign, rule

## 2 Kings 21:25

### are they not written ... Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written ... Judah.” or “you can find them ... Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> As for the other matters concerning Amon that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 21:26

### the garden of Uzza

This could mean: (1) “the garden that had once belonged to a man named Uzza” or (2) “Uzza Garden.” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 21:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Josiah
- reign, rule

#### ULT

**26** The people buried him in his tomb in the garden of Uzza, and Josiah his son became king in his place.

## 2 Kings 22

### 2 Kings 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The next two chapters (2 Kings 22-23) tell about the spiritual revival under King Josiah. A revival occurs when the people begin to worship Yahweh properly again. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The law

The priests found a copy of the law in the temple and took it to the king. He was upset because the people had disobeyed the law so badly. Josiah asked God about it. God said that he would destroy Judah for these sins but not in Josiah's lifetime, since he humbled himself and wanted to do better. Many scholars believe this was a copy of the book of Deuteronomy. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

## 2 Kings 22:1

### thirty-one years

“31 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Jedidah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Adaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bozkath

This is the name of a town in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Josiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign; he reigned thirty-one years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jedidah (she was the daughter of Adaiah of Bozkath).



## 2 Kings 22:2

### He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here “eyes” represents Yahweh’s thoughts or what he considered about something. Alternate translation: “He did what Yahweh considered to be right” or “He did what was right according to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. He walked in all the way of David his ancestor, and he did not turn away either to the right or to the left.

### He walked in all the way of David his ancestor

“He walked in all the ways of David his ancestor” Josiah behaving as David did is spoken of as if he walked on the same road or way as David. Alternate translation: “He lived the way David his ancestor had lived” or “He followed the example of David his ancestor” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he did not turn away either to the right or to the left

To fully obey Yahweh is spoken of as if a person were on the correct road and never turned from it. Alternate translation: “he did not do anything that would displease Yahweh” or “he fully obeyed all the laws of Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

## 2 Kings 22:3

### It came about that

If your language has a way to mark the beginning of a new part of the story, consider using it here.

### the eighteenth year

“Eighteenth” is the ordinal form of 18. Alternate translation: “year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Shaphan ... Azaliah ... Meshullam

These are men’s names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Josiah
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> It came about that in the eighteenth year of King Josiah, he sent Shaphan son of Azaliah son of Meshullam, the scribe, to the house of Yahweh, saying,

## 2 Kings 22:4

### Go up to Hilkiah

The phrase "Go up" is used because Yahweh's temple was higher in elevation than where King Josiah was located. Alternate translation: "Go to Hilkiah"

### Hilkiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### that has been brought into the house of Yahweh, which the temple guards have gathered from the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the temple guards who gathered the money from the people brought into the temple of Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### house of Yahweh

This is another name for the "temple" (verse 3).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [silver](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

### ULT

4 "Go up to Hilkiah the high priest and tell him to count the money that has been brought into the house of Yahweh, which the temple guards have gathered from the people.

## 2 Kings 22:5

### house of Yahweh ... in the temple

Here “house of Yahweh” and “temple” mean the same thing.

### Let it be given into the hand of the workmen

Here “hand” represents the workmen as a whole. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Tell Hilkiyah to give the money to the workmen” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- house, household

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Let it be given into the hand of the workmen who are in charge of the house of Yahweh, and let them give it to the workmen who are in the house of Yahweh, for them to make repairs to damage in the temple.

## 2 Kings 22:6

### General Information:

The message from King Josiah to Hilkiah, the high priest, continues.

### Let them give money

Here “them” refers to the workmen who are in charge of the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#).

### the carpenters, the builders, and the masons

These are the same as the workmen who are in the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#). Here the workers are described in more detail.

### carpenters

workers who build with wood

### masons

workers who build with stone

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house, household](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Let them give money to the carpenters, the builders, and the masons, and also to buy timber and cut stone to repair the temple.”

## 2 Kings 22:7

### was given to them ... because they handled

Here “them” and “they” refer to the workmen who are in charge of the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#).

### no accounting was required for the money that was given to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the workmen who were in charge did not have to report how they used the money that the temple guards gave them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### because they handled it faithfully

“because they used the money honestly”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But no accounting was required for the money that was given to them, because they handled it faithfully.

## 2 Kings 22:8

### Hilkiah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 18:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the book of the law

Most likely these laws were written on a scroll. A scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

### Translation Words - ULT

- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- priest, priesthood
- scribe
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Hilkiah
- Hilkiah
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Hilkiah the high priest said to Shaphan the scribe, "I have found the book of the law in the house of Yahweh." So Hilkiah gave the book to Shaphan, and he read it.

## 2 Kings 22:9

### given it into the hand of the workmen

Here “hand” represents the workmen as a whole. Alternate translation: “given it to the workmen” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- hand
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- silver

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Shaphan went and took the book to the king, and also reported to him, saying, “Your servants have spent the money that was found in the temple and they have given it into the hand of the workmen who supervise the care for the house of Yahweh.”



## 2 Kings 22:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- scribe
- Hilkiah
- declare, proclaim, announce
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then Shaphan the scribe said to the king, "Hilkiah the priest has given me a book." Then Shaphan read it to the king.

## 2 Kings 22:11

### It came about that

If your language has a way to mark the beginning of a new part of the story, consider using it here.

### had heard the words of the law

Here “words” represents the message of the law. Alternate translation: “had heard the laws that were written in the book” or “had heard the laws that were written in the scroll” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he tore his clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- king, kingship

#### ULT

**11** It came about that when the king had heard the words of the law, he tore his clothes.

## 2 Kings 22:12

### Ahikam ... Shaphan ... Akbor ... Micaiah ... Asaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The king commanded Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam son of Shaphan, Akbor son of Micaiah, Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah, his own servant, saying,

## 2 Kings 22:13

### Go and consult with Yahweh

It is made clear in 22:14 that the king means for the men to go to the prophetess of Yahweh to determine Yahweh's will.

#### consult

to go to someone to ask for advice

### the words of this book that has been found

Here "words" represents the laws. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "the laws in this book that Hilkiah has found" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### For great is the anger of Yahweh that has been kindled against us

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that was lit. Alternate translation: "For Yahweh is very angry with us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### all that was written concerning us

This refers to the law that was given to Israel. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all that Moses wrote in the law that we should do" or "all the laws that God gave through Moses to the people of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

#### ULT

13 "Go and consult with Yahweh for me, and for the people and for all Judah, because of the words of this book that has been found. For great is the anger of Yahweh that has been kindled against us because our ancestors have not listened to the words of this book so as to obey all that was written concerning us."

## 2 Kings 22:14

### Huldah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Shallum ... Tikvah ... Harhas

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### keeper of the wardrobe

This could mean: (1) the person who took care of the clothing that priests wore in the temple or (2) the person who took care of the king's clothing.

### she lived in Jerusalem in the second quarter

Here "second quarter" refers to the new part of the city that was built on the north side of Jerusalem. Also, "second" is the ordinal form of 2. Alternate translation: "she lived in Jerusalem in the new part of the city" or "she lived in the new part of Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

### ULT

**14** So Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam, Akbor, Shaphan, and Asaiah went to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum son of Tikvah son of Harhas, keeper of the wardrobe (she lived in Jerusalem in the second quarter), and they spoke with her.

## 2 Kings 22:15

### the man who sent you to me

Here “the man” refers to King Josiah.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> She said to them, “This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: ‘Tell the man who sent you to me,

## 2 Kings 22:16

### I will bring disaster to this place and to its inhabitants

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that he could bring to a place. Alternate translation: "I will cause terrible things to happen to this place and to those who live there" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to this place

"to Jerusalem." This refers to the city of Jerusalem which represents the whole land of Judah. Alternate translation: "to Judah" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship

### ULT

**16** "This is what Yahweh says: 'See, I will bring disaster to this place and to its inhabitants, according to everything written in the book that the king of Judah has read.'

## 2 Kings 22:17

### General Information:

The message Yahweh sent to King Josiah through Huldah, the prophetess, continues.

### **my anger has been kindled against this place, and it will not be extinguished**

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that was lit. Alternate translation: "my anger against this place is like a fire that cannot be put out" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **this place**

Here "place" represents the people who live in Jerusalem and Judah. Alternate translation: "these people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**17** Because they have forsaken me and have burned incense to other gods, so that they might provoke me to anger with all the deeds they have committed —therefore my anger has been kindled against this place, and it will not be extinguished."



## 2 Kings 22:18

### About the words that you heard

Here “words” represents the message that Huldah just spoke.  
Alternate translation: “About the message that you heard” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### ULT

**18** But to the king of Judah, who sent you to ask Yahweh’s will, this is what you will say to him: “Yahweh, the God of Israel says this: ‘About the words that you heard,

## 2 Kings 22:19

### because your heart was tender

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. Feeling sorry is spoken of as if the heart were tender. Alternate translation: “because you felt sorry” or “because you repented” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### that they would become a desolation and a curse

The abstract nouns “desolation” and “curse” can be stated as an adjective and a verb. Alternate translation: “that I would make the land desolate and would curse them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### torn your clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### this is Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 19:33](#). Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**19** because your heart was tender, and because you have humbled yourself before Yahweh, when you heard what I said against this place and its inhabitants, that they would become a desolation and a curse, and because you have torn your clothes and wept before me, I also have listened to you—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

## 2 Kings 22:20

### General Information:

This is the end of the message from Yahweh to King Josiah through the prophetess Huldah.

### See, I will gather you to your ancestors, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace

Both statements mean basically the same thing. They are polite ways of saying he will die. Alternate translation: "So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### Your eyes will not see

Here "will not see" represents not experiencing something. Alternate translation: "You will not experience" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Your eyes

Here "eyes" represents the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the disaster that I will bring upon this place

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that Yahweh would bring to a place. Alternate translation: "the terrible things I will cause to happen in this place" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingship
- return, turn back
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### ULT

**20** See, I will gather you to your ancestors, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace. Your eyes will not see all the disaster that I will bring upon this place.'"" So the men took this message back to the king.

## **2 Kings 23**

### **2 Kings 23 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

The story of Josiah ends in this chapter.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Ending idolatry**

Josiah destroyed idolatry in Judah and in the deserted areas of Israel. But he fought against Egypt and was killed in battle. After his death, Egypt set up a government of Judah that it controlled.

## 2 Kings 23:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- elder, older, old
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So the king sent messengers who gathered to him all the elders of Judah and of Jerusalem.

## 2 Kings 23:2

### all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “many other people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### from small to great

This merism includes everyone in between. Alternate translation: “from the least important to the most important” (See: [Merism](#))

### He then read in their hearing

“Then the king read aloud so that they could hear”

### that had been found

In [2 Kings 22:8](#) it states that Hilkiah found the book. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that Hilkiah had found” or “that they had found” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then the king went up to the house of Yahweh, and all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem with him, and the priests, prophets, and all the people, from small to great. He then read in their hearing all the words of the book of the Covenant that had been found in the house of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 23:3

### walk after Yahweh

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path, and “to walk after” someone is a metonym for doing what that other person does or wants others to do. Alternate translation: “live obeying Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes

These words all share similar meanings. Together they emphasize everything that Yahweh had commanded in the law. (See: [Doublet](#))

### with all his heart and all his soul

The idiom “with all his heart” means “completely” and “with all his soul” means “with all his being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. Alternate translation: “with all his being” or “with all his energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

### that were written in this book

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that this book contained” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### stand by the covenant

This idiom means to “obey the terms of the covenant.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [covenant \(2\)](#)
- [heart](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [confirm, confirmation, legal](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The king stood by the pillar and made a covenant before Yahweh, to walk after Yahweh and to keep his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes, with all his heart and all his soul, to confirm the words of this covenant that were written in this book. So all the people agreed to stand by the covenant.

## 2 Kings 23:4

### the priests under him

“the other priests who served him”

### gatekeepers

men who guarded the gates to the temple

### for Baal ... for all the stars

“so people could use them to worship Baal ... so people could use them to worship all the stars”

### He burned ... and carried

The word “he” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “he had them burn them ... and carry them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Kidron Valley ... Bethel

names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The king commanded Hilkiah the high priest, the priests under him, and the gatekeepers to bring out of the temple of Yahweh all the vessels that were made for Baal and Asherah, and for all the stars of heaven. He burned them outside Jerusalem in the fields in the Kidron Valley and carried their ashes to Bethel.



## 2 Kings 23:5

### He got rid

The word “He” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “He had them get rid” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to Baal, to the sun and the moon, to the planets, and to all the stars

“as a way to worship Baal, the sun and the moon, the planets, and all the stars”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah \(2\)](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He got rid of the idolatrous priests whom the kings of Judah had chosen to burn incense at the high places in the cities of Judah and in the places around Jerusalem—those who burned incense to Baal, to the sun and the moon, to the planets, and to all the stars of heaven.

## 2 Kings 23:6

### General Information:

This continues to tell what King Josiah did in response to the message from Yahweh.

### He brought out ... and burned it ... He beat it ... and threw

The word “he” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “He had them bring out ... and burn it ... He had them beat it ... and throw” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He brought out the Asherah pole from the temple of Yahweh, outside Jerusalem to the Kidron Valley and burned it there. He beat it to dust and threw that dust onto the graves of the common people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

## 2 Kings 23:7

### He cleared

The word “He” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “He had them clear” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### wove garments

“made clothes”

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- house, household
- house, household

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He cleared out the rooms of the cultic prostitutes who were in the temple of Yahweh, where the women wove garments for Asherah.

## 2 Kings 23:8

### Josiah brought ... and defiled ... He destroyed

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He commanded them to bring ... and to defile ... He had them destroy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Geba ... Beersheba

names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Joshua (the city governor)

"the city ruler named Joshua" or "the city leader named Joshua." This is a different Joshua from the Joshua in the Old Testament Book of Joshua.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Josiah brought all the priests out of the cities of Judah and defiled the high places where the priests had burned incense, from Geba to Beersheba. He destroyed the high places at the gates that were at the entrance to the gate of Joshua (the city governor), on the left side of the city gate.

## 2 Kings 23:9

### their brothers

Here “brothers” refers to their fellow priests who served at the temple.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- brother
- priest, priesthood
- unleavened bread
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- devour

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Although the priests of those high places were not allowed to serve at the altar of Yahweh in Jerusalem, they ate unleavened bread among their brothers.

## 2 Kings 23:10

### Topheth ... Ben Hinnom

place names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### cause his son or his daughter to pass through the fire as a sacrifice to Molech

“put his son or his daughter in the fire and burn them as an offering to Molech”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### ULT

**10** Josiah defiled Topheth, which is in the Valley of Ben Hinnom, so that no one might cause his son or his daughter to pass through the fire as a sacrifice to Molech.

## 2 Kings 23:11

### He took away

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the horses

This could mean: (1) real horses or (2) statues of horses.

### had given to the sun

Here “given” represents being dedicated for worship. Alternate translation: “had used to worship the sun” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Nathan-Melek

a man’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- chariot, charioteers
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house, household
- king, kingship

### ULT

**11** He took away the horses that the kings of Judah had given to the sun. They had been in an area at the entrance to the temple of Yahweh, near the room of Nathan-Melek, the chamberlain. Josiah burned the chariots of the sun.

## 2 Kings 23:12

### Josiah the king destroyed ... Josiah smashed ... and threw

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "Josiah the king commanded them to destroy ... He had them smash ... had them throw" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the kings of Judah had made ... Manasseh had made

Manasseh and the kings of Judah probably commanded their workers to make these things. Alternate translation: "the kings of Judah had their workers make ... Manasseh had his workers make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Kidron Valley

place name. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 23:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- Yahweh
- Ahaz
- Judea, Judah
- court, courtyard
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Josiah the king destroyed the altars that were on the roof of the upper chamber of Ahaz, which the kings of Judah had made, and the altars that Manasseh had made in the two courts of the temple of Yahweh. Josiah smashed them into pieces and threw them into the Kidron Valley.



## 2 Kings 23:13

### The king ruined

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He had them ruin ... He had them break ... they filled" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Solomon the king of Israel had built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do these things. Alternate translation: "Solomon the king of Israel had his workers build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**13** The king ruined the high places east of Jerusalem, south of the mount of corruption that Solomon the king of Israel had built for Ashtoreth, the detestable idol of the Sidonians; for Chemosh, the detestable idol of Moab; and for Molech, the detestable idol of the people of Ammon.

## 2 Kings 23:14

### He broke ... he filled

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He had them break ... they filled" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### filled those places with the bones of human beings

"covered the ground with human bones so people could not use it as a shrine anymore" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Adam](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)

### ULT

**14** He broke the stone pillars into pieces and cut down the Asherah poles and he filled those places with the bones of human beings.

## 2 Kings 23:15

### Josiah also completely destroyed ... He also burned ... and beat ... He also burned

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Jeroboam

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Josiah also completely destroyed the altar that was at Bethel and the high place that Jeroboam son of Nebat (the one who made Israel to sin) had constructed. He also burned that altar and the high place and beat it to dust. He also burned the Asherah pole.

## 2 Kings 23:16

### spoke of these things beforehand

“had said that these things would happen”

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- call, call out
- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh
- Josiah

### ULT

**16** As Josiah looked over the area, he noticed the graves that were on the hillside. He sent men to take the bones from the graves; then he burned them on the altar, which defiled it. This was according to the word of Yahweh which the man of God had spoken, the man who spoke of these things beforehand.

## 2 Kings 23:17

### monument

marker or statue that honors a person. A tomb is one kind of monument.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- God
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Judah
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

**17** Then he said, "What monument is that I see?" The men of the city told him, "That is the grave of the man of God who came from Judah and spoke about these things that you have just done against the altar of Bethel."

## 2 Kings 23:18

### So they let his bones alone, along with the bones of

“So they did not touch his bones or the bones of”

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> So Josiah said, “Let it alone. No one should move his bones.” So they let his bones alone, along with the bones of the prophet who had come from Samaria.

## 2 Kings 23:19

### Josiah removed ... He did

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the kings of Israel had made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, probably the kings’ workers, might have helped the kings make these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### what had been done

“what he had done”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**19** Then Josiah removed all the houses on the high places that were in the cities of Samaria, which the kings of Israel had made, and that provoked Yahweh to anger. He did to them exactly what had been done at Bethel.

## 2 Kings 23:20

### He slaughtered ... he burned

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he burned human bones on them

You may need to make explicit why he burned the bones. “he burned human bones on them so no one would use them again” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> He slaughtered all the priests of the high places on the altars and he burned human bones on them. Then he returned to Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- priest, priesthood
- Adam
- Jerusalem
- return, turn back



## 2 Kings 23:21

### Keep the Passover

“You must celebrate the Passover”

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- covenant
- God
- Yahweh
- king, kingship
- people, people group

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then the king commanded all the people, saying, “Keep the Passover to Yahweh your God, as it is written in this book of the covenant.”

## 2 Kings 23:22

### Such a Passover celebration had never been held from the days of

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Israel had not celebrated the Passover festival in such a great way in the time of” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Such a Passover celebration had never been held from the days of the judges who ruled Israel, nor in all the days of the kings of Israel or Judah.

### ruled Israel

The name “Israel” is a metonym for “the descendants of Israel.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the days of the kings of Israel or Judah

“the time when the people of Israel had their own king and the people of Judah had their own king”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 23:23

### this Passover of Yahweh was celebrated

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people of Judah celebrated this Passover of Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Passover](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But in the eighteenth year of King Josiah this Passover of Yahweh was celebrated in Jerusalem.

## 2 Kings 23:24

### banished ... spirits

“forced those ... spirits to leave” or “made a law that those ... spirits had to leave”

### those who talked with the dead or with spirits

See how you translated “those who talked with the dead and ... those who talked with spirits,” in [2 Kings 21:6](#).

### fetishes

things that people wrongly believe have special power

### Translation Words - ULT

- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Hilkiah
- Jerusalem
- Josiah
- Judea, Judah
- house, household

### ULT

**24** Josiah also banished those who talked with the dead or with spirits. He also banished the fetishes, the idols, and all the disgusting things that were seen in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, so as to confirm the words of the law which were written in the book that Hilkiah the priest had found in the house of Yahweh.

## 2 Kings 23:25

### who turned to Yahweh

“who gave himself completely to Yahweh”

### Nor did any king like Josiah arise after him

“And since then there has never been a king who was like Josiah”

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- life, live, living, alive
- restore, restoration
- Yahweh
- Moses
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Before Josiah, there had been no king like him, who turned to Yahweh with all his heart, all his soul, and all his might, who followed all the law of Moses. Nor did any king like Josiah arise after him.

## 2 Kings 23:26

### Nevertheless

The writer uses this word to show that even though all of these things that Josiah did were good, Yahweh was still angry with Judah.

### Yahweh did not turn away from the burning of his fierce anger, which burned against

Fire is a metaphor for anger, and starting a fire is a metaphor for becoming angry. The abstract noun “anger” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “Yahweh did not stop being fierce because he was angry with” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### had done to provoke him

“had done to cause him to be angry”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Nevertheless, Yahweh did not turn away from the burning of his fierce anger, which burned against Judah because of all that Manasseh had done to provoke him to anger.

## 2 Kings 23:27

### out of my sight

“from where I am” or “from being near me”

### My name will be there

The name is a metonym for the honor that people should give to the person. Alternate translation: “People should worship me there”  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**27** So Yahweh said, “I will also remove Judah out of my sight, as I have removed Israel, and I will throw away this city that I have chosen, Jerusalem, and the house of which I said, ‘My name will be there.’”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [house, household](#)

## 2 Kings 23:28

### are they not written ... Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: "you can find them ... Judah." (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**28** As for the other matters concerning Josiah, everything that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?



## 2 Kings 23:29

### In his days, Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt

“During the time of Josiah, Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt”

### Necho ... Megiddo

Necho is the name of a man. Megiddo is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River, the River
- Josiah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> In his days, Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt, went to fight against the king of Assyria at the Euphrates River. King Josiah went to meet Necho in battle, and Necho killed him at Megiddo.

## 2 Kings 23:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- Josiah
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- people, people group
- reign, rule
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Josiah's servants carried him dead in a chariot from Megiddo, brought him to Jerusalem, and buried him in his own grave. Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz son of Josiah, anointed him, and made him king in his father's place.

## 2 Kings 23:31

### twenty-three years old

“23 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Hamutal

This is a woman’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Libnah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. His mother’s name was Hamutal; she was the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah.

## 2 Kings 23:32

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Jehoahaz did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, like everything that his ancestors had done.

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

## 2 Kings 23:33

### Riblah ... Hamath

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### put him in chains

Being put "in chains" represents being captured and imprisoned.  
Alternate translation: "put him in prison" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### finned Judah

"forced the people of Judah to give him"

### one hundred talents ... one talent

A talent was about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: "3,300 kilograms...33 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [silver](#)

### ULT

**33** Pharaoh Necho put him in chains at Riblah in the land of Hamath, so that he might not reign in Jerusalem. Then Necho fined Judah one hundred talents of silver and one talent of gold.

## 2 Kings 23:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- name
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Eliakim
- Jehoiakim
- Josiah
- Josiah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Pharaoh Necho made Eliakim son of Josiah king in the place of Josiah his father, and changed his name to Jehoiakim. But he took Jehoahaz away to Egypt, and Jehoahaz died there.

## 2 Kings 23:35

### Jehoikim taxed the land

“Jehoikim collected taxes from the people who owned land”

### people of the land

“people of the land of Judah.” This could mean: (1) “the people who lived in the land of Judah” or (2) “the richest and most powerful of those who lived in Judah.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiakim
- earth, land
- earth, land (2)
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- people, people group
- silver
- silver
- silver

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Jehoiakim paid the silver and gold to Pharaoh. In order to meet the demand of Pharaoh, Jehoikim taxed the land and he forced each man among the people of the land to pay him the silver and gold according to their assessments.

## 2 Kings 23:36

### Zebidah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Pedaiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Rumah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Zebidah; she was the daughter of Pedaiah of Rumah.



## 2 Kings 23:37

### did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Jehoiakim did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, just as his ancestors had done.

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

## 2 Kings 24

### 2 Kings 24 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

These last two chapters are the final defeat of Judah and the beginning of their exile to Babylon.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God's punishment

God punished Judah because of their sin. The Babylonians conquer Jerusalem and carry away all the craftsmen, soldiers and wealthy. They make Zedekiah the king. He was not truly a king because he lacked absolute authority. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

## 2 Kings 24:1

### In Jehoiakim's days

"During the time that Jehoiakim ruled Judah"

### attacked Judah

You may need to make explicit what happened after Nebuchadnezzar attacked Judah. Alternate translation: "attacked and defeated Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In Jehoiakim's days, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon attacked Judah; Jehoiakim became his servant for three years. Then Jehoiakim turned back and rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Jehoiakim
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king, kingship
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

## 2 Kings 24:2

### This was in conformity with the word of Yahweh that had been spoken through his servants the prophets

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “This was according to the word of Yahweh that his servants the prophets had spoken” or “This was exactly what Yahweh had told his servants the prophets to say would happen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Judah
- Moab, Moabite
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh sent against Jehoiakim bands of Chaldeans, Arameans, Moabites, and Ammonites; he sent them against Judah to destroy it. This was in conformity with the word of Yahweh that had been spoken through his servants the prophets.

## 2 Kings 24:3

### It was certainly at the mouth of Yahweh

Some versions have, "It was certainly because of the wrath of Yahweh," which is just as good a reading of the original text. If translators have access to versions in major languages in their region, they should probably follow their choice.

### at the mouth of Yahweh

Here "mouth" represents Yahweh's command. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh had commanded" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### remove them out of his sight

"get rid of them" or "destroy them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> It was certainly at the mouth of Yahweh that this came on Judah, to remove them out of his sight, because of the sins of Manasseh, all that he did, <sup>[1]</sup>

## 2 Kings 24:4

### innocent blood that he shed

Blood is a metonym for innocent life, and shedding blood is a metonym for killing innocent people. Alternate translation: “innocent people whom he killed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood

Blood is a metonym for innocent life, and shedding blood is a metonym for killing innocent people. Alternate translation: “he killed many innocent people in Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> and also because of the innocent blood that he shed, for he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood. Yahweh was not willing to pardon that.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [blood](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

## 2 Kings 24:5

### are they not written ... Judah?

This is written as a rhetorical question because at the time this was written people were already aware of this information. This can be written as a statement. It can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are indeed written ... Judah.” or “you can find them ... Judah” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jehoiakim, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

## 2 Kings 24:6

### slept with his ancestors

Sleeping is a euphemism for dying. Alternate translation: "died and was buried along with his ancestors" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jehoiakim
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Jehoiakim slept with his ancestors, and Jehoiachin his son became king in his place.



## 2 Kings 24:7

### The king of Egypt did not attack any more out of his land

“The king of Egypt did not come out of his land any more to attack other people groups”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River, the River
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)
- king, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The king of Egypt did not attack any more out of his land, because the king of Babylon had conquered all the lands that had been controlled by the king of Egypt, from the brook of Egypt to the Euphrates River.

## 2 Kings 24:8

### Nehushta ... Elnathan

Nehushta is the name of a woman. Elnathan is the name of a man.  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he began to reign; he reigned in Jerusalem three months. His mother's name was Nehushta; she was the daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem.

## 2 Kings 24:9

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; he did all that his father had done.

### he did all that his father had done

Here "all" is a generalization. It means he did the same sinful things as his father. Alternate translation: "he committed the same kinds of sins his father had committed" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

## 2 Kings 24:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> At that time the army of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon attacked Jerusalem and besieged the city.

## 2 Kings 24:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came to the city while his soldiers were besieging it,

## 2 Kings 24:12

### Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, his mother, his servants, his princes, and his officers

You may need to make explicit why Jehoiachin went out to meet Nebuchadnezzar. Alternate translation: “Jehoiachin the king of Judah, with his mother, his servants, his princes, and his officers, went out to where the king of Babylon was, to surrender to him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> and Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, his mother, his servants, his princes, and his officers. The king of Babylon captured him in the eighth year of his own reign.

### The king of Babylon captured him in the eighth year of his own reign

“After the king of Babylon had been king for more than seven years, he captured Jehoiachin”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian (2)
- Judea, Judah
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship (2)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- reign, rule
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

## 2 Kings 24:13

### Solomon king of Israel had made

You might want to translate this so the reader understands that Solomon might have had others help him do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household \(2\)](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [storehouse](#)

### ULT

**13** Nebuchadnezzar took out from there all the valuable things in the house of Yahweh, and those in the king's palace. He cut into pieces all the golden objects that Solomon king of Israel had made in the temple of Yahweh, as Yahweh had said would happen.

## 2 Kings 24:14

### He took into exile all Jerusalem

Here “Jerusalem” is a metonym for the people who lived there. And, “all” is a generalization. It means all the most important people  
Alternate translation: “Nebuchadnezzar took all the important people away from Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

### the craftsmen and the smiths

“the men who knew how to make and repair things that are made from metal”

### No one was left except the poorest people in the land

This can be translated as a positive statement. Alternate translation: “Only the poorest people in the land still lived there” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [chief, leader](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [people, people group](#)

### ULT

**14** He took into exile all Jerusalem, all the leaders, and all the fighting men, ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and the smiths. No one was left except the poorest people in the land.



## 2 Kings 24:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- earth, land
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Nebuchadnezzar took Jehoiachin into exile at Babylon, as well as the king's mother, wives, officers, and the chief men of the land. He took them into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon.

## 2 Kings 24:16

### seven thousand ... one thousand

“7,000...1,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

### ULT

**16** All the fighting men, seven thousand in number, and one thousand craftsmen and blacksmiths, all of them fit for fighting—the king of Babylon brought these men into exile at Babylon.

## 2 Kings 24:17

### Mattaniah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Zedekiah
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

### ULT

**17** The king of Babylon made Mattaniah, Jehoiachin's father's brother, king in his place, and changed his name to Zedekiah.

## 2 Kings 24:18

### twenty-one ... eleven

“21...11” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Hamutal

This is a woman’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jeremiah

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Libnah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he began to reign; he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. His mother’s name was Hamutal; she was the daughter of Jeremiah from Libnah.

## 2 Kings 24:19

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**19** He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; he did all that Jehoiakim had done.

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- Jehoiakim

## 2 Kings 24:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- Zedekiah
- face, facial
- king, kingship
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Through Yahweh's anger, all these events happened in Jerusalem and Judah, until he drove them out of his presence. Then Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

24:3 <sup>[1]</sup>.

## **2 Kings 25**

### **2 Kings 25 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is the final defeat of Judah and the beginning of their exile to Babylon.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Zedekiah's revolt**

Zedekiah revolted against the Babylonians, so they came and completely destroyed Jerusalem. They tore down the city walls and took the rest of the people to Babylon as slaves, except the very poorest people remained.

## 2 Kings 25:1

### in the ninth year

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month

This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the end of December on Western calendars. This is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

### came with all his army against Jerusalem

The name “Jerusalem” is a metonym for the people who lived in it. Alternate translation: “came with his whole army to fight against the people of Jerusalem” or “came with his whole army to conquer Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It happened that in the ninth year of the reign of King Zedekiah, in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came with all his army against Jerusalem. He camped opposite it, and they built a siege wall around it.



## 2 Kings 25:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Zedekiah
- king, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So the city was besieged until the eleventh year of King Zedekiah's reign.

## 2 Kings 25:3

### the ninth day of the fourth month

This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. The ninth day is near the end of June on Western calendars. This is during the dry season when there is very little or no rain. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

### the people of the land

These are the inhabitants of Jerusalem, including refugees from the surrounding villages that fled to Jerusalem when the war started.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [people, people group](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> On the ninth day of the fourth month of that year, the famine was so severe in the city that there was no food for the people of the land.

## 2 Kings 25:4

### Then the city was broken into

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Then the Babylonian army broke into the city” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### all the fighting men

“all the warriors”

### by the way of the gate

“by using the gate”

### the Chaldeans

Some translations use “Chaldeans” and others use “Babylonians.” Both terms refer to the same people group.

### The king went in the direction of

“King Zedekiah also fled and he went toward”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Arabah
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingship

### ULT

**4** Then the city was broken into, and all the fighting men fled at night by the way of the gate between the two walls, by the king’s garden, although the Chaldeans were all around the city. The king went in the direction of the Arabah.

## 2 Kings 25:5

### All his army was scattered away from him

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “His whole army ran away from him” or “The Chaldeans chased away his whole army” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Jericho
- king, kingship
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But the army of Chaldeans pursued King Zedekiah and overtook him in the plains of the Jordan River valley near Jericho. All his army was scattered away from him.

## 2 Kings 25:6

### Riblah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### passed sentence on him

“decided what they would do to punish him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They captured the king and brought him up to the king of Babylon at Riblah, where they passed sentence on him.

## 2 Kings 25:7

### they slaughtered them before his eyes

The eyes are synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “they forced king Zedekiah to watch them kill his sons” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### he put out his eyes

“Nebuchadnezzar put out Zedekiah’s eyes.” It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people might have helped Nebuchadnezzar do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> As for Zedekiah’s sons, they slaughtered them before his eyes. Then he put out his eyes, bound him in bronze chains, and brought him to Babylon.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)

## 2 Kings 25:8

### in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month

This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The seventh day is near the end of July on Western calendars. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

### the nineteenth year

This is the ordinal form of the number 19. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Nebuzaradan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship \(2\)](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month, which was the nineteenth year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, Nebuzaradan, a servant of the king of Babylon and commander of his bodyguards, came to Jerusalem.

## 2 Kings 25:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- house, household
- house, household
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He burned the house of Yahweh, the king's palace, and all the houses of Jerusalem; also every important building in the city he burned.



## 2 Kings 25:10

### As for all the walls around Jerusalem, all

“This is what happened to all the walls around Jerusalem: all”

### who were under

“who were following the orders of”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Jerusalem
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

#### ULT

**10** As for all the walls around Jerusalem, all the army of the Babylonians who were under the commander of the bodyguard destroyed them.

## 2 Kings 25:11

### As for the rest of the people ... city, those

“This is what happened to the rest of the people ... city: those”

### the rest of the people who were left in the city

“the people who remained in the city”

### deserted to the king

“left the city and gone to be with the king”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [exile, exiled](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

#### ULT

**11** As for the rest of the people who were left in the city, those who had deserted to the king of Babylon, and the remainder of the population—Nebuzaradan, the commander of the bodyguard, took them away into exile.

## 2 Kings 25:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- earth, land

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But the commander of the bodyguard did leave some of the poorest of the land to work the vineyards and fields.

## 2 Kings 25:13

### As for the bronze pillars ... Yahweh, the Chaldeans

“This is what happened to the bronze pillars ... Yahweh: the Chaldeans”

#### the stands

This refers to the large, moveable bronze stands with bronze wheels and axles. “the moveable bronze stands” or “the bronze stands with wheels”

#### the bronze sea

“the large bronze basin”

#### broke them into pieces

“cut them into pieces” or “chopped them up into small pieces”

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple, house, house of God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- bronze
- bronze
- bronze
- house, household
- column, pillar

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> As for the bronze pillars that were in the house of Yahweh, and the stands and the bronze sea that were in the house of Yahweh, the Chaldeans broke them into pieces and carried the bronze back to Babylon.

## 2 Kings 25:14

### shovels

A shovel was a tool that was used to clean the altar, typically used to move big piles of dirt, sand, or ashes.

### with which the priests had served in the temple

“which the priests had used in the temple service”

### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

### ULT

**14** The pots, shovels, lamp trimmers, spoons, and all the utensils of bronze with which the priests had served in the temple—the Chaldeans took them all away.

## 2 Kings 25:15

### The pots for removing ashes

You may need to make explicit which ashes are spoken of. Alternate translation: "The pots that were used for removing ashes from the altar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- silver
- silver

### ULT

**15** The pots for removing ashes and the bowls that were made of gold, and those made of silver—the captain of the king's guard took them away as well.

## 2 Kings 25:16

### the sea

“the large bronze basin.” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:13](#).

### the stands

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:13](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- house, household
- column, pillar

### ULT

**16** The two pillars, the sea, and the stands that Solomon had made for the house of Yahweh contained more bronze than could be weighed.

## 2 Kings 25:17

### eighteen cubits ... three cubits

A cubit was 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “about 8.3 meters ... about 1.4 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### a capital of bronze

“an artistic, bronze design” or “a bronze piece with designs”

### latticework

This was a design made of crossed strips that looked like a net.

### all made of bronze

“completely made of bronze”

### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- bronze
- column, pillar
- column, pillar

### ULT

**17** The height of the first pillar was eighteen cubits, and a capital of bronze was on top of it. The capital was three cubits high, with latticework and pomegranates all around on the capital, all made of bronze. The other pillar and its latticework were the same as the first.



## 2 Kings 25:18

### The commander of the bodyguard

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:8](#).

### Seraiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the second priest

These words refer to Zephaniah. Another possible meaning is “the priest under Seraiah.”

### gatekeepers

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:10](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood \(2\)](#)
- [Zephaniah](#)
- [chief, leader](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

### ULT

**18** The commander of the bodyguard took Seraiah the chief priest, together with Zephaniah, the second priest, and the three gatekeepers.

## 2 Kings 25:19

### took prisoner

“captured and kept from escaping”

### an officer who was in charge of soldiers

Other translations may read “a eunuch who was in charge of soldiers.” A eunuch is a man whose private parts have been removed.

### officer responsible for drafting men into the army

This could mean: (1) the officer forced men to become soldiers or (2) the officer wrote down the names of the men who became soldiers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- earth, land
- earth, land
- face, facial
- king, kingship
- oversee, overseer, keeper
- people, people group
- people, people group
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### ULT

**19** From the city he took prisoner an officer who was in charge of soldiers, and five men of those who advised the king, who were still in the city. He also took prisoner the king's army officer responsible for drafting men into the army, along with sixty important men from the land who were in the city.

## 2 Kings 25:20

### Nebuzaradan

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:8](#).

### Riblah

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:6](#).

### ULT

**20** Then Nebuzaradan, the commander of the bodyguard, took them and brought them to the king of Babylon at Riblah.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

## 2 Kings 25:21

### put them to death

This is a polite way of saying “killed them.” It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people might have helped the king do this. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### In this way, Judah went out of its land into exile

“So Judah was taken into exile out of its land”

### Judah went out of its land

Judah, the name of the people group, is a metonym for the people themselves. Alternate translation: “the people of Judah went out of their land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

### ULT

**21** The king of Babylon put them to death at Riblah in the land of Hamath. In this way, Judah went out of its land into exile.

## 2 Kings 25:22

### Gedaliah ... Ahikam ... Shaphan

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [people, people group](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> As for the people who remained in the land of Judah, those whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had left, he put Gedaliah son of Ahikam, son of Shaphan, in charge of them.

## 2 Kings 25:23

### Ishmael ... Nethaniah ... Johanan ... Kareah ... Seraiah ... Tanhumeth ... Jaazaniah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Netophathite

This refers to a person who is a descendant of a man named Netophah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Maakathite

This refers to a person who comes from a place called Maakah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Now when all the commanders of the soldiers, they and their men, heard that the king of Babylon had made Gedaliah governor, they went to Gedaliah at Mizpah. These men were Ishmael son of Nethaniah, Johanan son of Kareah, Seraiah son of Tanhumeth the Netophathite, and Jaazaniah son of the Maakathite—they and their men.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(3\)](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

## 2 Kings 25:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- king, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Gedaliah made an oath to them and to their men, and said to them, “Do not be afraid of the Chaldean officials. Live in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it will go well with you.”

## 2 Kings 25:25

### the seventh month

This is the seventh month on the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Elishama

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jew, Jewish](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [descend, descendant](#)

### ULT

**25** But it happened that in the seventh month Ishmael son of Nethaniah son of Elishama, from the royal family, came with ten men and attacked Gedaliah. Gedaliah died, along with the men of Judah and the Babylonians who were with him at Mizpah.



## 2 Kings 25:26

### all the people

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “many people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### from the least to the greatest

This is a merism that means “everyone,” which is a generalization.

Alternate translation: “from the least important to the most important” or “everyone” (See: [Merism](#))

### ULT

**26** Then all the people, from the least to the greatest, and the commanders of the soldiers, arose and went to Egypt, because they were afraid of the Babylonians.

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

## 2 Kings 25:27

### in the thirty-seventh year

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### in the twelfth month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month

This is the twelfth month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-seventh day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Awel-Marduk

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [head](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship \(2\)](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> It happened later in the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, that Awel-Marduk king of Babylon released Jehoiachin king of Judah from prison. This happened in the year that Awel-Marduk began to reign.

## 2 Kings 25:28

### a seat more honorable than that of the other kings

Giving a good place at the dining table is a metonym for honoring him. Alternate translation: "more honor than the other kings" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- king, kingship
- throne, enthroned
- throne, enthroned

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> He spoke kindly to him and gave him a seat more honorable than that of the other kings who were with him in Babylon.

## 2 Kings 25:29

### removed Jehoiachin's prison clothes

The act of removing Jehoiachin's prison clothes represents making him a free man. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### at the king's table

"with the king and his officials"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Awel-Marduk removed Jehoiachin's prison clothes, and Jehoiachin ate regularly at the king's table for the rest of his life.

## 2 Kings 25:30

### A regular food allowance was given to him

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The king made sure that he had a regular food allowance" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> A regular food allowance was given to him every day for the rest of his life.

### A regular food allowance

"Money to buy food"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [king, kingship](#)



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 24**

## Abstract Nouns

### Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:27](#); [10:16](#); [13:4](#); [15:5](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [21:16](#); [22:19](#); [23:26](#))



## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Abstract Nouns*

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:18; 2:9; 2:22; 3:17; 4:13; 5:10; 5:14; 5:17; 6:5; 6:25; 7:1; 7:11; 7:16; 8:23; 8:24; 8:29; 9:7; 9:15; 9:20; 9:27; 10:17; 10:21; 10:24; 11:3; 11:8; 12:3; 12:9; 12:15; 12:16; 14:4; 14:5; 14:6; 14:12; 15:4; 15:6; 15:11; 15:15; 15:26; 15:31; 15:35; 16:10; 16:19; 16:20; 18:30; 21:17; 21:25; 22:4; 22:5; 22:7; 22:13; 23:2; 23:3; 23:22; 23:23; 23:28; 24:2; 24:5; 25:4; 25:5; 25:30)

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:2; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:8; 1:9; 1:13; 1:14; 1:16; 1:17; 2:9; 2:14; 2:16; 2:17; 2:19; 3:1; 3:4; 3:7; 3:12; 3:17; 3:19; 3:25; 3:27; 4:4; 4:7; 4:8; 4:13; 4:19; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:27; 4:31; 4:39; 5:5; 5:7; 5:16; 5:17; 5:22; 5:23; 6:2; 6:10; 6:12; 6:15; 6:19; 6:23; 6:31; 6:32; 6:33; 7:1; 7:10; 7:13; 7:14; 8:3; 8:5; 8:6; 8:12; 8:15; 8:16; 8:18; 8:19; 8:21; 8:22; 8:25; 8:27; 9:5; 9:9; 9:10; 9:13; 9:15; 9:24; 9:25; 9:26; 9:29; 9:33; 9:34; 10:5; 10:6; 10:9; 10:19; 10:21; 10:25; 11:1; 11:7; 11:15; 12:3; 12:16; 13:14; 13:17; 13:21; 13:23; 14:3; 14:4; 14:5; 14:14; 15:1; 15:8; 15:12; 15:13; 15:15; 15:17; 15:23; 15:27; 15:29; 15:30; 15:32; 15:37; 16:1; 16:3; 16:18; 18:14; 19:15; 19:28; 20:9; 20:10; 20:11; 20:16; 21:5; 21:6; 22:14; 23:11; 23:14; 23:15; 23:19; 23:20; 24:1; 24:12; 24:13; 25:7; 25:15; 25:21)

## Background Information

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

**Example** — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter’s cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day,” and “that they had brought with them.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were,” rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” and “Peter **was** the best hunter in the village.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

### A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
  - > \* Setting includes:
    - > \* where the story takes place
    - > \* when the story takes place
    - > \* who is present when the story begins
    - > \* what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about 30 years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

And Jesus himself was beginning about 30 years old. He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli,

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus’ age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he was **going through the grain fields**, and his **disciples were picking and eating the heads of grain**, rubbing them in their hands. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus’ disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, “But some of the Pharisees said ....”

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language’s way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language’s way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

**And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word “and” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother**, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.



(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.  
**Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

“**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother**, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John’s rebuke and Herod’s actions.

“Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother’s wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:  
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]  
[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:21](#); [8:4](#); [9:14](#); [9:16](#); [13:20](#))

## Biblical Distance

### Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong,” which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

### Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter,” “45 centimeters,” or “50 centimeters.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**.”

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; <sup>1</sup> its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; <sup>2</sup> and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; <sup>1</sup> its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; <sup>2</sup> and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits  
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:13; 25:17](#))

# Biblical Money

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

  

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

## Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

## Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

█ The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

█ "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

█ "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

█ "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

█ [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii**,<sup>1</sup> and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

█ <sup>[1]</sup> A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [18:14](#); [23:33](#))

## Biblical Volume

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheke	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

### Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

## When the unit of measure is stated

### Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**.”

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**.”

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.



“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters<sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters<sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only 22 liters<sup>3</sup>.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] one bath  
[2] one homer  
[3] one ephah

## When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#); [7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#))

# Biblical Weight

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

## Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

## Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

█ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

█ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. <sup>1</sup>"

The footnote would look like:

█ <sup>[1]</sup> This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#))

## Copy or Borrow Words

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

### Examples From the Bible

Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

- (1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
- (2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
- (3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

.A man’s name in Hebrew letters — זְפַנְיָהּ  
 “Zephaniah” — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah — This is a man’s name.  
 “Zephaniah” — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah — If your language does not have the “z,” you could use “s.” If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f.” Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay.”  
 “Sefania”  
 “Sefanaia”  
 “Sefanaya”

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:9](#))

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

### Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."  
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you."  
(Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](https://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](https://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:8](#); [14:9](#))



## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

... in order **not** to be **un**fruitful. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

“For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

“... so that they may be fruitful.”

- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **unpunished**. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

“Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

“All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](https://en.ta.man/translate/figs-verbs)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:21](#); [3:14](#); [5:17](#); [10:21](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [24:14](#))

## Doublet

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

• English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:36](#); [19:16](#); [23:3](#))

# Ellipsis

## Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[1] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?* ([^1])  
 In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

## Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples From the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:13](#); [5:17](#); [5:23](#); [6:25](#); [6:32](#); [9:7](#))

## End of Story

### Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

### The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a comment about what happened in the story
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

### Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

### Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of



silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:18](#); [7:19](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.  
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:31](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [8:24](#); [9:8](#); [9:33](#); [10:6](#); [10:11](#); [10:35](#); [13:9](#); [13:13](#); [14:16](#); [14:22](#); [14:29](#); [15:7](#); [15:22](#); [15:38](#); [16:20](#); [21:18](#); [22:20](#); [24:6](#); [25:21](#))

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:15](#); [19:33](#); [22:19](#))

# Fractions

## Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

... **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

## Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

## Examples From the Bible

Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

## Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
- (2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

## Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

**A third** of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

... then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

- (2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

... **two-thirds of a shekel** ... (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)

... **eight grams** of silver ... (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

... **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

**six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#))

## Hebrew Months

### Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

### List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Aviv** — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

**Sivan** — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

**Ab** — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

**Elul** — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

**Ethanim** — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.



**Kislev** — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

**Tebeth** — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

**Shebat** — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

**Adar** — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

## Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
- (2) Use the names for months that people know.
- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.
- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**<sup>1</sup> you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:25](#); [25:27](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

**(Go back to:** 2 Kings 1:2; 1:3; 3:3; 3:11; 3:25; 4:8; 4:12; 4:42; 5:12; 5:20; 6:13; 6:24; 8:7; 8:8; 8:22; 8:26; 9:1; 9:2; 9:14; 9:21; 9:25; 9:27; 9:31; 9:36; 10:12; 10:15; 10:29; 10:32; 10:33; 10:35; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:18; 12:1; 12:17; 12:20; 12:21; 13:10; 13:17; 13:24; 13:25; 14:2; 14:7; 14:11; 14:13; 14:19; 14:22; 14:25; 15:2; 15:10; 15:13; 15:14; 15:16; 15:19; 15:22; 15:23; 15:25; 15:29; 15:30; 15:33; 15:37; 16:1; 16:5; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 17:1; 17:3; 17:4; 17:6; 17:24; 17:30; 17:31; 18:1; 18:2; 18:4; 18:9; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 18:18; 18:26; 18:34; 18:37; 19:2; 19:8; 19:9; 19:12; 19:13; 19:37; 20:12; 21:1; 21:18; 21:19; 21:26; 22:1; 22:3; 22:4; 22:8; 22:12; 22:14; 23:4; 23:8; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:29; 23:31; 23:33; 23:36; 24:8; 24:17; 24:18; 25:6; 25:8; 25:18; 25:22; 25:23; 25:25; 25:27)

## Hyperbole

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

### Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.



## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
  - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
  - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [7:15](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#); [14:21](#); [16:4](#); [17:10](#); [18:24](#); [19:24](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:24](#); [23:2](#); [24:9](#); [24:14](#); [25:26](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

▮ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

▮ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

▮ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

▮ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

▮ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

▮ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

▮ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

▮ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

▮ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

▮ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

▮ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

▮ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [Notes](#); [3:3](#); [3:11](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#); [4:13](#); [4:38](#); [5:22](#); [5:27](#); [6:1](#); [6:11](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:20](#); [6:32](#); [6:33](#); [8:8](#); [8:18](#); [8:27](#); [9:1](#); [9:32](#); [9:34](#); [10:6](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:20](#); [10:22](#); [10:27](#); [10:31](#); [14:10](#); [15:19](#); [18:31](#); [Notes](#); [19:4](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [23:3](#))

## Introduction of a New Event

### Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

### Examples From the Bible

**In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

**Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

**Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector’s tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

**Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:1](#); [14:5](#))

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)



Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
- (2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!  
**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

- (2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot**

**speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-litotes]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [1:16](#); [5:12](#))

## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God,  
“the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.  
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:8](#); [23:2](#); [25:26](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page

in a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**”  
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”  
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:13; 1:14; 2:15; 2:21; 3:2; 3:14; 3:18; 5:10; 5:16; 7:2; 7:9; 7:17; 7:19; 8:9; 8:13; 8:18; 8:27; 9:31; 10:5; 10:10; 10:29; 10:30; 10:35; 12:2; 12:18; Notes; 13:2; 13:3; 13:6; 13:11; 13:23; 14:3; 14:9; 14:24; 14:26; 14:27; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:7; 15:9; 15:14; 15:18; 15:19; 15:22; 15:24; 15:25; 15:28; 15:29; 15:30; 15:34; 15:35; 15:38; 16:2; 16:3; 16:7; 16:9; 16:20; 17:2; 17:8; 17:17; 17:20; 17:21; 17:23; 17:40; 18:3; 18:6; 18:21; 18:31; 18:32; 19:3; 19:4; 19:21; 19:26; 19:28; 19:30; 20:3; 21:2; 21:6; 21:13; 21:16; 21:20; 21:21; 22:2; 22:13; 22:16; 22:17; 22:19; 22:20; 23:3; 23:26; 23:32; 23:37; 24:9; 24:19)

# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”  
or:  
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: 2 Kings 2:9; 2:15; 3:10; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:21; 4:15; 4:24; 4:40; 4:44; 5:1; 5:11; 6:13; 6:17; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:30; 7:9; 7:16; 8:6; 8:12; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:22; 8:27; 9:7; 9:9; 10:1; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:11; 10:15; 10:24; 10:30; 10:31; 11:3; 13:3; 13:5; 13:12; 13:13; 14:11; 14:25; 14:27; 15:9; 15:12; 15:18; 15:19; 15:24; 15:35; 16:3; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 17:6; 17:7; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:36; 18:12; 18:26; 18:29; 18:30; 18:34; 18:35; 19:7; 19:10; 19:22; 19:28; 19:32; 20:1; 20:4; 20:6; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:9; 21:13; 21:16; 22:2; 22:11; 22:17; 22:18; 22:19; 22:20; 23:3; 23:4; 23:5; 23:6; 23:7; 23:8; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:14; 23:22; 23:27; 23:33; 24:3; 24:4; 24:14; 25:1; 25:21; 25:28; 25:29)

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord*® *Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord*® *Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.  
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9; 1:11; 1:13; 2:7; 2:16; 2:24; 3:4; 3:26; 4:42; 4:43; 5:5; 6:25; 8:9; 8:17; 8:26; 10:1; 10:6; 10:7; 10:14; 10:36; 11:4; 11:9; 11:15; 11:19; 11:21; 12:1; 13:1; 13:10; 14:2; 14:7; 14:13; 14:23; 15:1; 15:8; 15:13; 15:17; 15:19; 15:23; 15:25; 15:27; 15:30; 15:32; 15:33; 16:1; 19:35; 20:6; 22:1; 23:31; 24:16; 24:18](#))

## Ordinal Numbers

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.



You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

**(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [3:1](#); [8:16](#); [8:25](#); [9:19](#); [9:29](#); [10:6](#); [10:30](#); [22:3](#); [22:14](#); [25:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:25](#); [25:27](#))**

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "**doublet**" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:14](#); [19:16](#); [19:21](#); [19:23](#); [19:25](#); [19:27](#); [19:29](#); [19:32](#); [20:5](#); [20:15](#); [22:20](#))

## Personification

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:9](#); [19:21](#))

## Possession

### Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “**of**,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather’s house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
  - My clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - my mother — the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
  - my teacher — the person who teaches me
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
  - David’s sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
  - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head — the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]



## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

## Examples From the Bible

**Ownership** — In the example below, the son owned the money.

█ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

**Social Relationship** — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

█ Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

**Association** — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

█ Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

**Material** — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

█ On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

**Contents** — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

█ For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

**Part of a whole** — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

█ But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

**Part of a group** — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

█ Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

## Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

█ The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

█ Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

**Object** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

**Instrument** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

**Representation** — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

## Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

## Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.  
or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:12](#); [2:11](#); [3:2](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1 General Notes; 1:3; 1:6; 1:16; 1:18; 2:18; 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 4:28; 4:43; 5:7; 5:8; 5:12; 5:13; 5:26; Notes; 6:11; 6:22; 6:27; 6:32; 6:33; 7:2; 7:3; 7:19; 8:13; 8:23; 9:18; 9:19; 9:22; 9:31; 10:4; 10:9; 10:34; 12:7; 12:19; 13:8; 13:12; 14:10; 14:15; 14:18; 14:28; 15:6; 15:21; 15:36; 16:19; 18:19; 18:20; 18:22; 18:24; 18:25; 18:27; 18:33; 18:34; 18:35; 19:11; 19:12; 19:22; 19:25; 20:19; 20:20; 21:17; 21:25; 23:28; 24:5)

## Simile

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

### Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)



How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [3:2](#); [3:14](#); [3:22](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [5:20](#); [5:27](#); [9:37](#); [13:7](#); [Notes](#))

## Symbolic Action

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [4:37](#); [5:7](#); [6:30](#); [10:15](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [22:11](#); [22:19](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Metonymy*

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: 2 Kings 3:6; 3:7; 3:9; 3:10; 3:21; 3:23; 3:24; 4:20; 5:2; 5:20; 6:22; 6:24; 7:2; 7:6; 7:19; 8:8; 8:12; 8:28; 8:29; 9:1; 9:8; 9:13; 9:14; 9:15; 10:3; 10:25; 10:32; 12:11; 12:17; 13:25; 14:6; 14:7; 14:8; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:22; 14:27; 15:19; 15:29; 16:5; 16:7; 16:9; 19:23; 20:17; 21:8; 21:14; 22:5; 22:9; 22:13; 22:16; 22:20; 25:7)



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 27**

## abomination, abominable

### Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, [false god](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:3](#); [21:2](#); [21:11](#))

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [Chaldea](#), Sarah, Isaac)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [2 Kings 13:23](#))



# Adam

## Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [descendant](#), Eve, image of God, [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:10](#); [19:18](#); [23:14](#); [23:20](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:39](#); [21:14](#))

## advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, [wise](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:8](#))

## afflict, affliction, distress

### Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one's soul” means to abstain from eating food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:26](#); [21:11](#))

# Ahab

## Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Baal, [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), kingdom of Israel, [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:6
- 2 Kings 9:8

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:3** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0256

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:1](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [8:16](#); [8:18](#); [8:25](#); [8:27](#); [8:28](#); [8:29](#); [9:7](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [9:25](#); [9:29](#); [10:1](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [10:30](#); [21:3](#); [21:13](#))

# Ahaz

## Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:1
- 2 Kings 16:20
- Hosea 1:1
- Isaiah 1:1
- Isaiah 7:4
- Matthew 1:9-11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0271

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:38](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:19](#); [16:20](#); [17:1](#); [18:1](#); [20:11](#); [23:12](#))

# Ahaziah

## Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Joash](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:39-40
- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Kings 11:2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0274

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:18](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [8:29](#); [9:16](#); [9:21](#); [9:23](#); [9:27](#); [9:29](#); [10:13](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [12:18](#); [13:1](#); [14:13](#))

# Ahijah

## Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), Shiloh)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 21:21-22
- 1 Samuel 14:19
- 2 Chronicles 10:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0281

([Go back to: 2 Kings 9:9](#))



## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:11](#); [11:18](#); [12:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#); [18:22](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [23:9](#); [23:12](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:20](#))

## Amaziah

### Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

- King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
- He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
- Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
- He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
- He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
- Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joash, Edom)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Chronicles 4:34
- 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
- 2 Kings 14:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0558

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:21](#); [13:12](#); [14:1](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:17](#); [14:18](#); [14:21](#); [14:23](#); [15:1](#); [15:3](#))

## Amorite

### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

### Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567,

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:11](#))

## Amoz

### Facts:

Amoz was the father of the prophet Isaiah.

- The only times he is mentioned in the Bible are when Isaiah is identified as the “son of Amoz.”
- This name is different from the name of the prophet Amos and should be spelled differently.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Amos, [Isaiah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:2
- Isaiah 37:1-2
- Isaiah 37:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0531

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:2](#); [19:20](#); [20:1](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: 2 Kings 2:12; 3:2; 3:13; 4:18; 4:19; 5:13; 6:21; 8:24; 9:25; 9:28; 10:3; 10:35; 12:18; 12:21; 13:9; 13:13; 13:14; 13:25; 14:3; 14:5; 14:6; 14:16; 14:20; 14:21; 14:22; 14:29; 15:3; 15:7; 15:9; 15:22; 15:34; 15:38; 16:2; 16:20; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:41; 18:3; 19:12; 20:5; 20:17; 20:21; 21:3; 21:8; 21:15; 21:18; 21:20; 21:21; 21:22; 22:2; 22:13; 22:20; 23:30; 23:32; 23:34; 23:37; 24:6; 24:9)

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:7](#); [2:20](#); [3:6](#); [3:14](#); [4:10](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [4:34](#); [5:16](#); [5:24](#); [6:31](#); [8:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:17](#); [9:30](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:7](#); [10:27](#); [11:14](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [12:17](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:16](#); [15:20](#); [18:14](#); [19:28](#); [20:7](#); [21:7](#); [25:22](#))

## Arabah

### Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: desert, Sea of Reeds, [Jordan River](#), Canaan, Salt Sea, [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 2:29
- Jeremiah 2:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1026, H6160

([Go back to: 2 Kings 14:25; 25:4](#))



## Ararat

### Facts:

In the Bible, “Ararat” is the name given to a land, a kingdom, and a mountain range.

- The “land of Ararat” was probably located in what is now the northeastern part of the country of Turkey.
- Ararat is best known as the name of the mountain that Noah’s ark came to rest on after the waters of the great flood began to recede.
- In modern times, a mountain called “Mount Ararat” is often thought to be the location of the “mountains of Ararat” in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ark, Noah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:35-37
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Isaiah 37:38
- Jeremiah 51:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0780

([Go back to: 2 Kings 19:37](#))

## ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

### Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), atonement, holy place, [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:9](#); [12:10](#))

## Asaph

### Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), harp, lute, [prophet](#), psalm, [trumpet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 2:8
- Psalm 50:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0623

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:18](#); [18:37](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:3](#); [10:20](#); [22:4](#); [22:20](#))

## Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:19; 15:20; 15:29; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:18; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:23; 17:24; 17:26; 17:27; 18:7; 18:9; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:16; 18:17; 18:19; 18:23; 18:28; 18:30; 18:31; 18:33; 19:4; 19:6; 19:8; 19:10; 19:11; 19:17; 19:20; 19:32; 19:35; 19:36; 20:6; 23:29](#))

## Athaliah

### Facts:

Athaliah was the evil wife of Jehoram king of Judah. She was the granddaughter of the evil King Omri of Israel.

- Athaliah's son Ahaziah became king after Jehoram died.
- When her son Ahaziah died, Athaliah made a plan to kill all the rest of the king's family.
- But Athaliah's young grandson Joash was hidden by his aunt and saved from being killed. After Athaliah had ruled the land for six years, she was killed and Joash became king.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), Jehoram, Joash, [Omri](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Kings 11:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6271

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:26](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:13](#); [11:14](#); [11:20](#))

## Baasha

### Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asa, [false god](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:17
- 2 Kings 9:9
- Jeremiah 41:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1201

([Go back to: 2 Kings 9:9](#))

## Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:24](#); [17:30](#); [20:12](#); [20:14](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [24:1](#); [24:7](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [24:12](#); [24:15](#); [24:16](#); [24:17](#); [24:20](#); [25:1](#); [25:6](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#); [25:11](#); [25:13](#); [25:20](#); [25:21](#); [25:22](#); [25:23](#); [25:24](#); [25:27](#))



## barley

### Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G29150, G29160

([Go back to: 2 Kings 4:42; 7:1; 7:16; 7:18](#))

## Bashan

### Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:13
- Amos 4:1
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 9:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1316

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:33](#))

## Beersheba

### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abimelech, [Abraham](#), Hagar, Ishmael, [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 3:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- Nehemiah 11:30

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0884

([Go back to: 2 Kings 12:1; 23:8](#))

## believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

#### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

#### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

**(Go back to: [2 Kings 6 General Notes; Notes](#))**

## Beth Shemesh

### Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levite](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:9
- 1 Samuel 6:9
- Joshua 19:20-22
- Judges 1:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 14:11](#); [14:13](#))

## Bethel

### Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 1:23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:23](#); [10:29](#); [17:28](#); [23:4](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#))



## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:8](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”

- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:29](#); [5:15](#); [10:15](#); [18:31](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:23](#); [9:7](#); [9:26](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [21:16](#); [24:4](#))

## blot out, wipe out

### Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 7:23
- Psalm 51:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G18130

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:13](#))

## bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [4:37](#); [5:21](#); [7:4](#); [14:10](#); [19:7](#))

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

([Go back to: 2 Kings 4:8; 4:42; 6:22; 18:32; 25:3; 25:29](#))



## bridegroom

### Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the **man** who will marry the bride (the **woman**).

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the “Bridegroom” who will someday come for his “Bride,” the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

### Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:15-16
- John 3:30
- Luke 5:35
- Mark 2:19
- Mark 2:20
- Matthew 9:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2860, G35660

([Go back to: 2 Kings 8:27](#))

## bronze

### Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

([Go back to: 2 Kings 16:14; 16:15; 16:17; 18:4; 25:13; 25:14; 25:17](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:6](#); [9:2](#); [10:13](#); [23:9](#))

## burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:17](#); [8:9](#); [14:10](#))

## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:27](#); [5:17](#); [10:24](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#))

## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:10](#); [13:21](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:10](#); [3:13](#); [4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:36](#); [8:1](#); [9:1](#); [10:19](#); [22:16](#); [23:16](#))



# camel

## Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:21
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 3:4
- Matthew 19:23-24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

([Go back to: 2 Kings 8:9](#))

## captive, captivate, captivity, catch

### Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), prison, seize)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:22](#))

## cedar, cedarwood

### Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0730

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:23](#))

## Chaldea, Chaldean

### Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:2](#); [25:5](#); [25:10](#); [25:13](#); [25:26](#))

## chariot, charioteers

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#); [23:11](#))

## cherub

### Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3742, G55020

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:15](#))

## chief, leader

### Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [head](#), chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:5](#); [11:10](#); [24:14](#); [25:18](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:18](#); [4:34](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:10](#))

## column, pillar

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [false god](#), image)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:14](#); [23:3](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [25:17](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3; 2:21; 2:24; 3:6; 4:18; 4:21; 4:37; 4:39; 5:27; 6:15; 7:12; 7:16; 7:17; 8:3; 9:21; 9:24; 9:34; 10:9; 10:19; 10:22; 10:26; 11:5; 11:9; 11:12; 11:15; 12:11; 13:5; 14:6; 15:20; 16:15; 16:16; 17:13; 17:15; 17:16; 17:19; 17:27; 17:34; 17:35; 18:6; 18:12; 18:18; 18:31; 18:36; 19:27; 19:35; 20:1; 21:8; 22:12; 23:3; 23:4; 23:6; 23:21; 24:12; 24:13; 25:23](#))

## confirm, confirmation, legal

### Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:15](#); [23:3](#))

## consecrate, consecrated, consecration

### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:20](#); [12:18](#))

## consume, devour

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Kings 13:17](#); [13:19](#))



## **courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement**

### **Facts:**

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 19:26](#))

## court, courtyard

### Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, [king](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [2 Kings 20:4](#); [21:5](#); [23:12](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), promise)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:4](#); [11:17](#); [13:23](#); [17:15](#); [17:35](#); [18:12](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:21](#))

## cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:17](#))

## **cry, cry out, outcry**

### **Definition:**

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#), [pray](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [4:1](#); [4:40](#); [6:26](#); [8:5](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350



(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:24](#); [3:18](#))

## cut off, cut down

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:8](#); [11:4](#); [11:17](#); [17:15](#); [17:35](#); [17:38](#); [18:4](#); [19:23](#); [23:3](#); [23:14](#))

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:19](#); [8:24](#); [9:28](#); [11:10](#); [12:21](#); [14:20](#); [15:7](#); [15:38](#); [16:20](#); [17:21](#); [18:3](#); [19:34](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [21:7](#); [22:2](#))

## deceive, lie, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:29](#); [19:10](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:22](#); [4:36](#); [5:11](#); [6:11](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [10:20](#); [11:14](#); [12:7](#); [14:7](#); [18:4](#); [18:18](#); [18:28](#); [19:14](#); [20:11](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [23:2](#); [23:17](#))

## deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:26](#); [6:27](#); [13:5](#); [14:27](#); [16:7](#); [19:19](#); [19:30](#))

## descend, descendant

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:25](#))

## destroy, destruction, annihilate

### Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:8](#); [11:1](#); [19:18](#); [24:2](#))



## devour

### Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: [consume](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [4:41](#); [4:42](#); [4:43](#); [4:44](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:28](#); [6:29](#); [7:2](#); [7:8](#); [7:19](#); [9:10](#); [9:34](#); [9:36](#); [18:31](#); [19:29](#); [23:9](#); [25:29](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

## 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

## 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), faith, [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [4:20](#); [5:7](#); [7:4](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [8:15](#); [9:27](#); [9:31](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [12:21](#); [13:20](#); [13:24](#); [14:19](#); [15:10](#); [15:14](#); [15:25](#); [15:30](#); [17:25](#); [20:1](#); [21:23](#); [23:29](#); [23:34](#); [25:21](#); [25:25](#))

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

([Go back to: 2 Kings 6:25; 7:7](#))

## drink offering

### Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 7:16-18
- Numbers 5:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:15](#))

## earth, land

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#); [3:20](#); [4:37](#); [5:15](#); [5:19](#); [8:1](#); [8:6](#); [10:10](#); [10:33](#); [11:3](#); [11:14](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [13:18](#); [15:5](#); [15:19](#); [15:29](#); [16:15](#); [17:5](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [18:25](#); [18:32](#); [18:33](#); [18:35](#); [19:11](#); [19:15](#); [19:17](#); [19:19](#); [19:37](#); [21:24](#); [23:30](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [24:14](#); [24:15](#); [25:3](#); [25:12](#); [25:19](#))

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:6](#); [17:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:36](#); [18:21](#); [18:24](#); [21:15](#); [23:29](#); [23:34](#); [24:7](#); [25:26](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:32](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [19:2](#); [23:1](#))



## Eliakim

### Facts:

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
- Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
- Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hezekiah, [Jehoiakim](#), [Josiah](#), Pharaoh)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18
- 2 Kings 18:26
- 2 Kings 18:37
- 2 Kings 23:34-35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0471, G16620

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 18:18](#); [18:26](#); [18:37](#); [19:2](#); [23:34](#))

## Elijah

### Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:3-4
- James 5:16-18
- John 1:19-21
- John 1:24-25
- Mark 9:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:2 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:3** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:4** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:7** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:3** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0452, G22430

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [3:11](#); [9:36](#); [10:10](#); [10:17](#))

# Elisha

## Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Naaman](#), [prophet](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:15-16
- 2 Kings 3:15
- 2 Kings 5:8
- Luke 4:25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0477

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:9](#); [2:12](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:8](#); [4:17](#); [4:32](#); [4:38](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [5:20](#); [5:25](#); [6:1](#); [6:12](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [7:1](#); [8:1](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:7](#); [8:10](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [9:1](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#))

## Ephraim, Ephraimite

### Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joseph, Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:22](#); [14:13](#))

## Ethiopia, Ethiopian

### Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cush, [Egypt](#), eunuch, Philip)

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:27
- Acts 8:30
- Acts 8:32-33
- Acts 8:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 3:9
- Zephaniah 3:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G01280

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:9](#))

## Euphrates River, the River

### Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:29; 24:7](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.

- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:19](#); [3:2](#); [4:41](#); [6:33](#); [Notes](#); [8:12](#); [8:18](#); [8:27](#); [13:2](#); [13:11](#); [14:10](#); [14:24](#); [Notes](#); [15:9](#); [15:18](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [Notes](#); [17:2](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [17:17](#); [Notes](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:12](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:20](#); [22:16](#); [22:20](#); [23:32](#); [23:37](#); [24:9](#); [24:19](#))



## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:4](#))

## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), glory, boast, [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:13](#))

## exile, exiled

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 2:25-26
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G39270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:11](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [17:28](#); [17:33](#); [25:11](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:14](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [5:1](#); [8:11](#); [8:15](#); [9:32](#); [9:37](#); [12:17](#); [13:4](#); [13:14](#); [13:23](#); [14:8](#); [14:11](#); [16:14](#); [17:18](#); [17:23](#); [18:24](#); [20:2](#); [21:13](#); [23:13](#); [23:27](#); [24:3](#); [24:20](#); [25:19](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 17:14](#); [Notes](#))

## famine

### Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#))



## favor, favorable, favoritism

### Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:18](#))

## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), marvel, power)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:15](#); [4:1](#); [6:16](#); [10:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:25](#); [17:28](#); [17:32](#); [17:33](#); [17:34](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#); [17:37](#); [17:38](#); [17:39](#); [17:41](#); [19:6](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

## feast, feasting

### Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:16](#); [4:17](#))

## fig

### Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

### Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:31](#); [20:7](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [2:11](#); [6:17](#); [8:12](#); [16:3](#); [17:17](#); [17:31](#); [19:18](#); [21:6](#); [23:10](#); [23:11](#); [25:9](#))

## firstfruits

### Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:42](#))

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:34](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#); [6:30](#); [9:36](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

### Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#))



## forsake, forsaken, leave

### Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [4:30](#); [8:6](#); [14:26](#); [22:17](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), grape, Holy Spirit, [vine](#), womb)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:29](#); [19:30](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, minister, [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10 General Notes](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:1](#); [7:3](#); [7:11](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:20](#); [9:31](#); [10:8](#); [11:6](#); [11:19](#); [14:13](#); [15:35](#); [18:16](#); [23:8](#); [25:4](#))

## Gilead, Gileadite

### Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:33](#); [15:29](#))

## Gilgal

### Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called "Gilgal" in the Old Testament.
- The word "gilgal" means "circle of stones," perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as "the gilgal." This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Elisha](#), [Jericho](#), [Jordan River](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 7:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:1-2
- Hosea 4:15
- Judges 2:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:1](#); [4:38](#))

## **gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

### **Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:21](#); [4:29](#); [7:10](#); [9:1](#); [9:21](#))



## **glean, gleanings**

### **Definition:**

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, [grain](#), [harvest](#), Ruth)

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:6
- Ruth 2:2
- Ruth 2:15

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 4:39](#))

## God

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:2; 1:3; 1:6; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:16; 2:14; 4:7; 4:9; 4:16; 4:21; 4:22; 4:25; 4:27; 4:40; 4:42; 5:8; 5:11; 5:14; 5:15; 5:17; 5:20; 6:6; 6:9; 6:10; 6:15; 6:31; 7:2; 7:17; 7:18; 7:19; 8:2; 8:4; 8:7; 8:8; 8:11; 9:6; 10:31; 13:19; 14:25; 16:2; 17:7; 17:9; 17:14; 17:16; 17:19; 17:26; 17:27; 17:29; 17:31; 17:33; 17:35; 17:37; 17:38; 17:39; 18:5; 18:12; 18:22; 18:33; 18:34; 18:35; 19:4; 19:10; 19:12; 19:15; 19:16; 19:18; 19:19; 19:20; 19:37; 20:5; 21:12; 21:22; 22:15; 22:17; 22:18; 23:16; 23:17; 23:21)

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [7:8](#); [10:29](#); [12:13](#); [12:18](#); [14:14](#); [16:8](#); [18:14](#); [20:13](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [24:13](#); [25:15](#))

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:19](#); [3:19](#); [3:25](#); [5:12](#); [8:9](#); [10:3](#); [10:5](#); [20:13](#); [20:19](#); [25:28](#))



## **govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, [king](#), power, province, Rome, ruler)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:24](#))

## grain offering

### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:20](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [20:12](#))

## grain, grainfields

### Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), wheat)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:32](#))

## grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [2 Kings 22:20](#); [23:6](#))

## hand

### Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, right hand, honor, [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: 2 Kings 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 3:15; 3:18; 4:29; 4:34; 5:5; 5:11; 5:18; 5:20; 5:24; 6:7; 7:2; 7:17; 8:8; 8:9; 8:20; 8:22; 9:1; 9:7; 9:23; 9:24; 9:36; 10:10; 10:15; 10:24; 11:8; 11:11; 11:12; 11:16; 12:11; 12:15; 13:3; 13:5; 13:16; 13:25; 14:5; 14:25; 14:27; 15:19; 16:7; 17:7; 17:13; 17:20; 17:23; 17:39; 18:29; 18:30; 18:33; 18:34; 18:35; 19:10; 19:14; 19:18; 19:19; 19:23; 19:26; 21:10; 21:14; 22:5; 22:7; 22:9; 22:17; 24:2)

## harvest, reap

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), festival, good news)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:18](#))

## head

### Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9](#); [2:3](#); [2:5](#); [4:19](#); [6:25](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:30](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [19:21](#); [25:27](#))



## heart

### Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#); [6:11](#); [9:24](#); [10:15](#); [10:31](#); [12:4](#); [14:10](#); [22:19](#); [23:3](#); [23:25](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [2:1](#); [2:11](#); [Notes](#); [7:2](#); [7:19](#); [14:27](#); [17:16](#); [19:15](#); [21:3](#); [21:5](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#))

## Hebrew

### Facts:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 18:26](#); [18:28](#))

## Hilkiah

### Facts:

Hilkiah was the high priest during the reign of King Josiah.

- When the temple was being repaired, Hilkiah the high priest found the Book of the Law and ordered that it be brought to King Josiah.
- After the Book of the Law was read to him, Josiah was grieved and caused the people of Judah to worship Yahweh again and obey his laws.
- Another man named Hilkiah was the son of Eliakim and worked in the palace during the time of King Hezekiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Eliakim](#), Hezekiah, high priest, [Josiah](#), Judah, law, [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2518

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:18](#); [18:26](#); [18:37](#); [22:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:14](#); [23:4](#); [23:24](#))

## Hittite

### Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, foreigner, Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

([Go back to: 2 Kings 7:6](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, set apart)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:9](#); [12:4](#); [12:18](#); [19:22](#))



## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

([Go back to: 2 Kings 18:32](#))

## horse, warhorse, horseback

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: [chariot](#), [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:11](#); [5:9](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:17](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:10](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [9:16](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:28](#); [9:33](#); [10:2](#); [10:16](#); [11:16](#); [13:16](#); [14:20](#); [18:23](#); [23:11](#); [23:30](#))

## horseman

### Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6571, H7395, G24600

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [13:14](#))

## Hoshea

### Facts:

Hoshea was the name of a king of Israel and several other men in the Old Testament.

- Hoshea son of Alah was a king of Israel for nine years during part of the reigns of Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.
- Joshua son of Nun was formerly named Hoshea. Moses changed Hoshea's name to Joshua before sending him and eleven other men to spy out the land of the Canaanites.
- After Moses died, Joshua led the people of Israel to take possession of the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Hoshea was a son of Azariah and was one of the leaders of the Ephraimites.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Canaan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Joshua](#), [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:20
- 2 Kings 15:30
- 2 Kings 17:3
- 2 Kings 18:1
- 2 Kings 18:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:30](#); [17:1](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:6](#); [18:1](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#))

## house, household

### Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshipped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [descendant](#), house of God, tabernacle, [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:32](#); [5:9](#); [5:18](#); [6:30](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:18](#); [8:27](#); [9:6](#); [9:7](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [9:27](#); [10:3](#); [10:5](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:21](#); [10:23](#); [10:25](#); [10:26](#); [10:27](#); [10:30](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:7](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [12:16](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [13:6](#); [14:14](#); [15:5](#); [15:25](#); [15:35](#); [16:8](#); [16:14](#); [16:18](#); [17:4](#); [17:21](#); [18:15](#); [18:18](#); [18:37](#); [19:1](#); [19:2](#); [19:14](#); [19:30](#); [19:37](#); [20:1](#); [20:5](#); [20:8](#); [20:13](#);

21:5; 21:13; 21:18; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:9; 23:2; 23:6; 23:7; 23:11; 23:12; 23:19; 23:24; 23:27; 24:13; 25:9; 25:13; 25:16; 25:27)

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:24](#); [21:14](#))



## iniquity

### Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:9](#))

## innocent

### Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

([Go back to: 2 Kings 21:16; 24:4](#))

## Isaiah

### Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Christ](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [Uzziah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 1:1
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 1:1
- Mark 7:6
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 4:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:2** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:8** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G22680

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:2](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [19:20](#); [20:1](#); [20:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [20:9](#); [20:11](#); [20:14](#); [20:16](#); [20:19](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** ***its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.***
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: Introduction to 2 Kings; 2 Kings 1:1; 1:3; 1:6; 1:16; 1:18; 2:12; 3:1; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:24; 3:27; 5:2; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:12; 5:15; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:21; 6:23; 6:26; 7:6; 7:13; 8:12; 8:16; 8:18; 8:25; 8:26; 9:3; 9:6; 9:8; 9:12; 9:14; 9:21; 10:21; 10:28; 10:29; 10:30; 10:31; 10:32; 10:34; 10:36; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:8; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:16; 13:18; 13:22; 13:25; 14:1; 14:8; 14:9; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:15; 14:16; 14:17; 14:23; 14:24; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 14:28; 14:29; 15:1; 15:8; 15:9; 15:11; 15:12; 15:15; 15:17; 15:18; 15:20; 15:21; 15:23; 15:24; 15:26; 15:27; 15:28; 15:29; 15:31; 15:32; 16:3; 16:5; 16:7; 17:1; 17:2; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:13; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:21; 17:22; 17:23; 17:24; 17:34; 18:1; 18:4; 18:5; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 19:15; 19:20; 19:22; 21:2; 21:3; 21:7; 21:8; 21:9; 21:12; 22:15; 22:18; 23:13; 23:15; 23:19; 23:22; 23:27; 24:13)

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to “Israel.” His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob’s twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning “heel.” As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person’s body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob’s name to “Israel,” which probably means “He struggles with God.”
- Jacob married Laban’s two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph’s father in Matthew’s genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [2 Kings 13:23](#); [17:34](#))

## Jehoiada

### Facts:

Jehoiada was a priest who helped hide and protect King Ahaziah's son Joash until he was old enough to be declared king.

- Jehoiada arranged for hundreds of bodyguards to protect young Joash as he was proclaimed king by the people in the temple.
- Jehoiada led the people in getting rid of all the altars of the false god Baal.
- For the rest of his life, Jehoiada the priest advised King Joash to help him obey God and rule the people wisely.
- Another man named Jehoiada was the father of Benaiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), Baal, Benaiah, Joash)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 11:4
- 2 Kings 12:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3077

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:4](#); [11:9](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [12:2](#); [12:7](#); [12:9](#))

# Jehoiakim

## Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- 2 Kings 23:34-35
- 2 Kings 24:1
- Daniel 1:2
- Jeremiah 1:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3079

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:34](#); [23:35](#); [23:36](#); [24:1](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [24:19](#))



## Jehoshaphat

### Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Kings 4:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:17
- 2 Samuel 8:15-18
- Matthew 1:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G24980

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [3:1](#); [3:7](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [8:16](#); [9:2](#); [9:14](#); [12:18](#))

# Jehu

## Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:35
- 1 Kings 16:2
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 10:9
- Hosea 1:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3058

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [9:22](#); [9:24](#); [9:27](#); [9:30](#); [9:31](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [10:11](#); [10:13](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [10:20](#); [10:21](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [10:28](#); [10:29](#); [10:30](#); [10:31](#); [10:34](#); [10:35](#); [10:36](#); [12:1](#); [13:1](#); [14:8](#); [15:12](#))

## Jeremiah

### Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a “fountain of tears,” to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [rebel](#), [suffer](#), [well](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 1:2
- Jeremiah 11:1
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:5** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G24080

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:31](#); [24:18](#))

# Jericho

## Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:15](#); [2:18](#); [25:5](#))

## Jeroboam

### Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Kings 3:1-3
- Amos 1:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:9 Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:3](#); [9:9](#); [10:29](#); [10:31](#); [13:2](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [13:13](#); [14:16](#); [14:23](#); [14:24](#); [14:27](#); [14:28](#); [14:29](#); [15:1](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:18](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [23:15](#))

# Jerusalem

## Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: 2 Kings 8:17; 8:26; 9:28; 12:1; 12:17; 12:18; 14:2; 14:13; 14:19; 14:20; 15:2; 15:33; 16:2; 16:5; 18:2; 18:17; 18:22; 18:35; 19:10; 19:21; 19:31; 21:1; 21:4; 21:7; 21:12; 21:13; 21:16; 21:19; 22:1; 22:14; 23:1; 23:2; 23:4; 23:5; 23:6; 23:9; 23:13; 23:20; 23:23; 23:24; 23:27; 23:30; 23:31; 23:33; 23:36; 24:4; 24:8; 24:10; 24:14; 24:15; 24:18; 24:20; 25:1; 25:8; 25:9; 25:10)

## Jew, Jewish

### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:6](#); [25:25](#))



## Jezebel

### Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 9:7
- 2 Kings 9:31
- Revelation 2:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0348, G24030

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:7](#); [9:10](#); [9:22](#); [9:30](#); [9:36](#); [9:37](#))

# Jonah

## Definition:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

- The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
- Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
- God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
- Jonah told the men sailing the ship that he was running away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did that, the storm stopped and the sailors offered a sacrifice to Yahweh.
- Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
- After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and the people stopped acting so violently toward others.
- Jonah became angry at God for not destroying Nineveh, and God used a plant and a worm to teach Jonah a lesson about compassion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: disobey, Nineveh, turn)

## Bible References:

- Jonah 1:3
- Luke 11:30
- Matthew 12:39
- Matthew 16:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3124, G24950

([Go back to: 2 Kings 14:25](#))

## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:13](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [7:15](#); [10:33](#))

## Joshua

### Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:8](#))

# Josiah

## Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:3
- Jeremiah 1:3
- Matthew 1:11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G25020

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:24](#); [21:26](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [23:16](#); [23:19](#); [23:23](#); [23:24](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [23:30](#); [23:34](#))

# Jotham

## Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, [Ahaz](#), Gideon, Uzziah)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:5
- Isaiah 1:1
- Judges 9:5-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:5](#); [15:7](#); [15:30](#); [15:32](#); [15:36](#); [15:38](#); [16:1](#))

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:14](#); [11:20](#))



# Judah

## Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), [Jew](#), [Judea](#), [Jacob](#), Leah)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:22](#); [14:28](#); [15:37](#); [18:22](#); [21:12](#); [23:17](#); [23:26](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#))

## Judea, Judah

### Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G24530

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17; 3:1; 3:7; 3:9; 3:14; 8:16; 8:19; 8:20; 8:22; 8:23; 8:25; 8:29; 9:16; 9:21; 9:27; 9:29; 10:13; 12:18; 12:19; 13:1; 13:10; 13:12; 14:1; 14:9; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:15; 14:17; 14:18; 14:21; 14:23; 15:1; 15:6; 15:8; 15:13; 15:17; 15:23; 15:27; 15:32; 15:36; 16:1; 16:19; 17:1; 17:18; 17:19; 18:1; 18:5; 18:13; 18:14; 18:16; 19:10; 19:30; 20:20; 21:11; 21:16; 21:17; 21:25; 22:13; 22:16; 22:18; 23:1; 23:2; 23:5; 23:8; 23:11; 23:12; 23:22; 23:24; 23:27; 23:28; 24:5; 24:12; 25:21; 25:22; 25:27](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment?**”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:7](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [Notes](#); [23:22](#); [25:6](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:15](#))

## king, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [3:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:21](#); [3:23](#); [3:26](#); [4:13](#); [5:1](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:21](#); [6:24](#); [6:26](#); [6:28](#); [6:30](#); [7:2](#); [7:6](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [8:18](#); [8:20](#); [8:23](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [8:28](#); [8:29](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#);

9:15; 9:16; 9:18; 9:19; 9:21; 9:27; 9:34; 10:4; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:13; 10:34; 11:2; 11:4; 11:5; 11:7; 11:8; 11:10; 11:11;  
11:12; 11:14; 11:16; 11:17; 11:19; 11:20; 12:6; 12:7; 12:10; 12:17; 12:18; 12:19; 13:1; 13:3; 13:4; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:12;  
13:13; 13:14; 13:16; 13:18; 13:22; 13:24; 14:1; 14:5; 14:8; 14:9; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:16; 14:17; 14:18; 14:22;  
14:23; 14:28; 14:29; 15:1; 15:5; 15:6; 15:8; 15:11; 15:13; 15:15; 15:17; 15:19; 15:20; 15:21; 15:23; 15:25; 15:26; 15:27;  
15:29; 15:31; 15:32; 15:36; 15:37; 16:1; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:12; 16:15; 16:16; 16:17; 16:18;  
16:19; 17:1; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:24; 17:26; 17:27; 18:1; 18:5; 18:7; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:15;  
18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:19; 18:21; 18:23; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 18:33; 18:36; 19:1; 19:4; 19:5; 19:6; 19:8; 19:9;  
19:10; 19:11; 19:13; 19:17; 19:20; 19:32; 19:36; 20:6; 20:12; 20:14; 20:18; 20:20; 21:3; 21:11; 21:17; 21:23; 21:24; 21:25;  
22:3; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 22:12; 22:16; 22:18; 22:20; 23:1; 23:2; 23:3; 23:4; 23:5; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:19; 23:21; 23:22;  
23:23; 23:25; 23:28; 23:29; 24:1; 24:5; 24:7; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:20; 25:1; 25:2; 25:4; 25:5;  
25:6; 25:8; 25:9; 25:11; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:27; 25:28; 25:30)



## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.

- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:15](#); [19:19](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, understand, [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:23](#); [4:1](#); [4:9](#); [4:39](#); [5:2](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:15](#); [7:12](#); [8:12](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:22](#); [10:25](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [11:15](#); [12:12](#); [17:26](#); [18:7](#); [19:9](#); [19:19](#); [19:27](#); [19:31](#); [20:4](#); [20:18](#); [21:15](#))

## law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:31](#); [14:6](#); [17:13](#); [17:34](#); [21:8](#); [Notes](#); [22:8](#); [22:11](#); [23:24](#); [23:25](#))

# Lebanon

## Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Psalms 29:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:9; 19:23](#))

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14



## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:2; 1:13; 1:14; 2:2; 2:4; 2:6; 3:14; 4:7; 4:16; 4:17; 4:27; 4:30; 5:16; 5:20; 7:4; 7:7; 7:12; 8:1; 8:5; 8:10; 8:14; 9:15; 10:14; 10:19; 10:24; 11:12; 12:4; 13:21; 14:17; 18:32; 19:4; 19:16; 20:1; 20:7; 23:3; 23:25)

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: 2 Kings 2:3; 2:5; 2:16; 2:19; 4:16; 4:28; 5:1; 5:3; 5:18; 5:20; 5:22; 5:25; 6:5; 6:12; 6:15; 6:22; 6:23; 6:26; 6:32; 8:5; 8:12; 8:14; 9:7; 9:11; 9:31; 10:2; 10:3; 10:6; 10:9; 18:23; 18:24; 18:27; 19:4; 19:6; 19:23)

## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [5:10](#); [14:8](#); [16:7](#); [17:4](#); [19:9](#); [19:23](#); [19:35](#))

## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), power, [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:1](#); [15:20](#); [24:14](#); [24:16](#))

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## Mizpah

### Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [Moab](#), Saul (OT))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

([Go back to: 2 Kings 25:23](#))



## Moab, Moabite

### Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:7](#); [3:10](#); [3:13](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [3:26](#); [13:20](#); [23:13](#); [24:2](#))

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:6](#); [18:4](#); [18:6](#); [18:12](#); [21:8](#); [23:25](#))

# Naaman

## Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Jordan River](#), leprosy, [prophet](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:6-7
- 2 Kings 5:1
- Luke 4:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:6** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G34970

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [5:11](#); [5:17](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [5:23](#); [5:27](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:24](#); [5:11](#); [14:7](#); [14:27](#); [17:34](#); [21:4](#); [21:7](#); [23:27](#); [23:34](#); [24:17](#))

# Naphtali

## Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Bilhah)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

([Go back to: 2 Kings 15:29](#))

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:18](#); [16:3](#); [17:8](#); [17:15](#); [17:26](#); [17:29](#); [17:33](#); [17:41](#); [18:33](#); [19:12](#); [19:17](#); [21:2](#); [21:9](#))

# Nebuchadnezzar

## Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, [Babylon](#), Hananiah, Mishael)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 1:2
- Daniel 4:4
- Ezekiel 26:8

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:6** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:8** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:9** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:1](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [25:1](#); [25:8](#); [25:22](#))



## **oath, swear, swearing, swear by**

### **Definition:**

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

([Go back to: 2 Kings 11:4; 25:24](#))

# oil

## Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:32](#))

## olive

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [5:26](#); [18:32](#); [20:13](#))

## Omri

### Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

- King Omri reigned for twelve years in the city of Tirzah.
- Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
- Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Israel](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Tirzah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6018

([Go back to: 2 Kings 8:26](#))

## ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordain](#), [statute](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:14](#); [17:33](#); [17:34](#); [17:37](#); [17:40](#))

## oversee, overseer, keeper

### Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term “keeper” means “overseer.”

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

### Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, shepherd)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:19](#))

## Passover

### Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6453, G39570

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 23:23](#))



## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:23](#); [4:26](#); [5:22](#); [9:19](#); [20:19](#))

## people, people group

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: 2 Kings 3:7; 4:41; 4:42; 4:43; 6:30; 7:16; 7:17; 7:20; 8:21; 9:6; 10:9; 10:18; 11:13; 11:14; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 11:20; 12:3; 12:8; 13:7; 14:4; 14:21; 15:4; 15:5; 15:10; 15:35; 16:15; 18:26; 18:36; 20:5; 21:24; 22:4; 22:13; 23:2; 23:3; 23:6; 23:21; 23:30; 23:35; 24:14; 25:3; 25:11; 25:19; 25:22; 25:26)

## perish

### Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

### Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [13:7](#); [21:3](#))

## Philistines

### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:2](#); [8:3](#); [18:8](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:13](#); [4:33](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [19:4](#); [19:15](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [22:19](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:8](#); [2:14](#); [4:8](#); [8:21](#); [14:9](#); [17:17](#); [18:12](#); [21:6](#))



## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:15](#); [11:18](#); [12:2](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:16](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [17:27](#); [17:28](#); [17:32](#); [19:2](#); [Notes](#); [22:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:14](#); [23:2](#); [23:4](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:20](#); [23:24](#); [25:18](#))

## prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [4:13](#); [5:1](#); [8:21](#); [9:5](#); [10:1](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:19](#); [23:8](#); [24:12](#); [25:19](#); [25:23](#); [25:26](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2 General Notes](#); [2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [Notes](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [4:1](#); [4:38](#); [5:3](#); [5:8](#); [5:13](#); [5:22](#); [6:1](#); [6:12](#); [Notes](#); [9:1](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [Notes](#); [10:19](#); [14:25](#); [17:13](#); [17:23](#); [19:2](#); [20:1](#); [20:11](#); [20:14](#); [21:10](#); [22:14](#); [23:18](#); [24:2](#))

## prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:16](#); [5:1](#); [6:15](#); [7:6](#); [25:1](#); [25:5](#); [25:10](#))

## prostrate, bow down, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#); [4:37](#); [5:18](#); [17:16](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#); [18:22](#); [19:37](#); [21:3](#); [21:21](#))

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260



(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 10:6](#))

## **punish, punished, punishment, unpunished**

### **Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 5:20](#))

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#))

## Ramah

### Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Benjamin, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 2:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 2:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G44710

([Go back to: 2 Kings 8:29](#))

## rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, [governor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:26](#); [18:7](#); [18:20](#); [24:1](#); [24:20](#))

## reign, rule

### Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17; 3:1; 8:15; 8:20; 8:24; 10:35; 11:12; 12:21; 13:9; 13:24; 14:16; 14:21; 14:29; 15:7; 15:10; 15:13; 15:14; 15:22; 15:25; 15:30; 15:38; 16:20; 17:21; 19:37; 20:21; 21:18; 21:24; 21:26; 23:30; 23:34; 24:6; 24:12; 24:17; 25:1](#))

## remnant

### Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:31](#); [21:14](#))



## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:5](#); [1:6](#); [2:25](#); [4:38](#); [8:6](#); [9:18](#); [9:20](#); [14:25](#); [14:28](#); [16:6](#); [17:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:24](#); [19:33](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#))

## return, turn back

### Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:5; 1:11; 1:13; 2:13; 2:18; 3:4; 3:27; 4:22; 4:31; 4:35; 5:10; 5:14; 5:15; 7:8; 7:15; 8:3; 8:29; 9:15; 9:36; 13:25; 14:14; 14:22; 15:20; 17:3; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:28; 19:36; 20:11; 21:3; 22:9; 22:20; 23:20; 24:1)

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), obey, [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:9](#))

## Rimmon

### Facts:

Rimmon was the name of a man and of several places mentioned in the Bible. It was also the name of a false god.

- A man named Rimmon was a Benjamite from the city of Beeroth in Zebulun. This man's sons murdered Ishbosheth, the crippled son of Jonathan.
- Rimmon was a town in the southern part of Judah, in the region occupied by the tribe of Benjamin.
- The "rock of Rimmon" was a place of safety where the Benjamites went to escape from being killed in a battle.
- Rimmon Perez was an unknown location in the Judean wilderness.
- The Syrian commander Naaman spoke of the temple of the false god Rimmon, where the king of Syria worshiped.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Benjamin, [Judea](#), [Naaman](#), Syria, Zebulun)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 4:5-7
- Judges 20:45-46
- Judges 21:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7417

([Go back to: 2 Kings 5:18](#))

## robe, robed

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:22](#))

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210



**(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:23](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [16:18](#))**

## sackcloth

### Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [ash](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [humble](#), [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

([Go back to: 2 Kings 19:1; 19:2](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [10:24](#); [12:3](#); [14:4](#); [15:4](#); [15:35](#); [16:15](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#))

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), Galilee, [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [2:25](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:24](#); [7:1](#); [7:18](#); [10:1](#); [10:12](#); [10:17](#); [14:14](#); [15:14](#); [17:5](#); [17:6](#); [17:24](#); [17:26](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#); [18:34](#); [21:13](#); [23:19](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:24](#); [19:37](#))

## scribe

### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:10](#); [18:18](#); [18:37](#); [19:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [25:19](#))



## seed, semen

### Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), [descendant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:1](#); [17:20](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:16](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [6:19](#); [22:13](#); [22:18](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), works, obey, [house](#), [lord](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

### Servant

- Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H0327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

## Enslave

- Strong's: H3533, G26150

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:13; 2:16; 2:23; 4:1; 4:12; 4:19; 4:22; 4:24; 4:25; 4:29; 4:30; 4:31; 4:32; 4:35; 4:38; 4:43; 5:2; 5:6; 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:17; 5:18; 5:20; 5:22; 5:23; 5:25; 5:26; 6:3; 6:8; 6:11; 6:15; 6:17; 7:12; 8:4; 8:13; 8:19; 9:4; 9:7; 9:11; 9:28; 9:36; 10:5; 10:10; 10:18; 10:19; 10:21; 10:22; 10:23; 12:20; 12:21; 14:5; 14:25; 16:7; 17:3; 17:13; 17:23; 17:33; 17:35; 17:41; 18:7; 18:12; 18:24; 18:26; 19:5; 19:6; 19:34; 20:6; 21:8; 21:10; 21:21; 21:23; 22:9; 22:12; 23:30; 24:1; 24:2; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 25:8; 25:14)

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, [false god](#), humble, [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:17](#); [8:11](#); [19:22](#); [19:23](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [2 Kings 20:8](#))

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:26](#); [6:25](#); [7:8](#); [12:4](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [14:14](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [16:8](#); [18:14](#); [18:15](#); [20:13](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [25:15](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:3](#); [10:29](#); [10:31](#); [13:2](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [14:24](#); [15:9](#); [15:18](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [17:7](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [18:14](#); [Notes](#); [21:11](#); [21:16](#); [21:17](#); [Notes](#); [23:15](#); [Notes](#); [24:3](#))

## slaughter, slaughtered

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slay](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:7](#); [10:14](#))

## Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:7](#); [23:13](#); [24:13](#); [25:16](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:17; 2:3; 2:5; 2:7; 2:15; 2:16; 3:1; 3:3; 3:11; 3:27; 4:1; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:7; 4:14; 4:16; 4:17; 4:28; 4:36; 4:37; 4:38; 5:22; 6:1; 6:28; 6:29; 6:31; 6:32; 8:1; 8:5; 8:9; 8:12; 8:16; 8:17; 8:19; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 8:28; 8:29; 9:1; 9:2; 9:9; 9:14; 9:20; 9:26; 9:29; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:13; 10:15; 10:23; 10:29; 10:30; 10:35; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:12; 11:21; 12:21; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:5; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:24; 13:25; 14:1; 14:2; 14:6; 14:8; 14:9; 14:13; 14:14; 14:16; 14:17; 14:21; 14:23; 14:24; 14:25; 14:27; 14:29; 15:1; 15:2; 15:5; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:17; 15:18; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:25; 15:27; 15:28; 15:30; 15:32; 15:33; 15:37; 15:38; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:7; 16:20; 17:1; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:17; 17:21; 17:22; 17:24; 17:31; 17:34; 17:41; 18:1; 18:2; 18:4; 18:9; 18:18; 18:26; 18:37; 19:2; 19:3; 19:12; 19:20; 19:37; 20:1; 20:12; 20:18; 20:21; 21:1; 21:2; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 21:18; 21:19; 21:24; 21:26; 22:1; 22:3; 22:12; 22:14; 23:6; 23:10; 23:13; 23:15; 23:30; 23:31; 23:34; 23:36; 24:2; 24:6; 24:8; 24:18; 25:7; 25:22; 25:23; 25:25)



## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:9](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [3:17](#); [Notes](#); [19:7](#); [Notes](#))

## statute

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:15](#); [17:37](#))

## storehouse

### Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Psalms 33:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0214, H0618, H0624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G05960

([Go back to: 2 Kings 24:13](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,  
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

**(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:26](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [14:5](#); [17:36](#))**

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

([Go back to: 2 Kings 3:26; 6:22; 8:12; 10:25; 11:15; 11:20; 19:7; 19:37](#))

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [4:35](#); [5:24](#); [6:32](#); [Notes](#); [11:4](#); [11:10](#); [Notes](#); [14:10](#); [15:5](#); [16:18](#); [17:29](#); [17:32](#); [18:16](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [21:4](#); [21:7](#); [21:23](#); [Notes](#); [22:5](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [23:2](#); [23:7](#); [25:13](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60

- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:29](#); [17:13](#); [17:15](#); [18:36](#))

## thresh

### Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:27](#))

## threshold, doorway

### Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), tent)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:17-19
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Isaiah 6:4
- Proverbs 17:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:9](#); [22:4](#); [23:4](#); [25:18](#))

## throne, enthroned

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:3](#); [10:30](#); [11:19](#); [13:13](#); [15:12](#); [25:28](#))

## Tirzah

### Facts:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

- The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
- Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
- Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's granddaughters. They asked to be given a portion of the land since their father had died and he had no sons to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [inherit](#), kingdom of Israel, Manasseh, Shechem)

### Bible References:

- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 36:11
- Song of Songs 6:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8656

([Go back to: 2 Kings 15:14; 15:16](#))

## tremble, stagger, shake

### Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:27](#); [19:28](#))



## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:18](#); [21:7](#))

## trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:3](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *\_true\_* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *\_true\_* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:17](#); [20:19](#))

## trumpet, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:13](#); [11:14](#))

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, faith, [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

([Go back to: 2 Kings 23:9](#))

# Uriah

## Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Hittite](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:5
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 3:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0223, G37740

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#))



## **vine**

### **Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, [vineyard](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 4:39](#); [18:31](#))

## vineyard

### Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#); [18:32](#); [19:29](#))

## virgin, virginity

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, [Isaiah](#), Jesus, Mary)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:21](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:12](#); [18:28](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:11](#); [2:16](#); [2:18](#); [3:13](#); [4:3](#); [4:7](#); [4:23](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [5:19](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:13](#); [6:19](#); [7:4](#); [7:9](#); [7:14](#); [8:10](#); [10:16](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [14:8](#); [17:27](#); [20:3](#); [20:9](#); [21:21](#); [21:22](#); [22:13](#); [24:15](#))

## watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:9](#); [9:14](#); [10:31](#); [12:9](#); [17:19](#); [17:37](#); [21:8](#); [22:4](#); [22:14](#); [23:4](#); [25:18](#))

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:7](#))

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:17](#))



# Yahweh

## Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

## Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:3; 1:4; 1:6; 1:15; 1:16; 1:17; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:14; 2:16; 2:21; 2:24; 3:2; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:17; 3:18; 4:1; 4:27; 4:30; 4:33; 4:43; 4:44; 5:1; 5:11; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18; 5:20; 6:17; 6:18; 6:20; 6:27; 6:33; 7:1; 7:2; 7:16; 7:19; 8:1; 8:8; 8:10; 8:13; 8:18; 8:19; 8:27; 9:3; 9:6; 9:7; 9:12; 9:25; 9:26; 9:36; 10:10; 10:16; 10:17; 10:23; 10:30; 10:31; 10:32; 11:3; 11:4; 11:7; 11:10; 11:13; 11:15; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 12:2; 12:4; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 12:16; 12:18; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:11; 13:17; 13:23; 14:3; 14:6; 14:14; 14:24; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 15:3; 15:5; 15:9; 15:12; 15:18; 15:24; 15:28; 15:34; 15:35; 15:37; 16:2; 16:3; 16:8; 16:14; 16:18; 17:2; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:11; 17:12; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:21; 17:23; 17:25; 17:28; 17:32; 17:33; 17:34; 17:35; 17:36; 17:39; 17:41; 18:3; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:22; 18:25; 18:30; 18:32; 18:35; 19:1; 19:4; 19:6; 19:14; 19:15; 19:16; 19:17; 19:19; 19:20; 19:21; 19:31; 19:32; 19:33; 19:35; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:5; 20:8; 20:9; 20:11; 20:16; 20:17; 20:19; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 21:10; 21:12; 21:16; 21:20; 21:22; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:8; 22:9; 22:13; 22:15; 22:16; 22:18; 22:19; 23:2; 23:3; 23:4; 23:6; 23:7; 23:9; 23:11; 23:12; 23:16; 23:21; 23:23; 23:24; 23:25; 23:26; 23:27; 23:32; 23:37; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:9; 24:13; 24:19; 24:20; 25:9; 25:13; 25:16)

## Zadok

### Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 1:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G45240

([Go back to: 2 Kings 15:33](#))

## Zechariah (OT)

### Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the tent of meeting during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Darius, Ezra, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jeroboam](#), Nehemiah, Zerubbabel)

### Bible References:

- Ezra 5:1-2
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Zechariah 1:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2148

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:29](#); [15:8](#); [15:11](#); [18:2](#))

## Zedekiah

### Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), [Ezekiel](#), kingdom of Israel, [Jehoiachin](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Nehemiah](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- Jeremiah 37:1-2
- Jeremiah 39:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6667

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:17](#); [24:18](#); [24:20](#); [25:2](#); [25:7](#))

## Zephaniah

### Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

- He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
- There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:18
- Jeremiah 52:24-25
- Zechariah 6:9-11
- Zephaniah 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6846

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:18](#))

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, Jebusites)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:21](#); [19:31](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs



Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
Leonard Smith  
Suzanna Smith  
Tim Span  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Maria Tijerina  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher

David Book

Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary

Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto

Matthew Latham

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics

Richard Joki

Door43 World Missions Community